



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

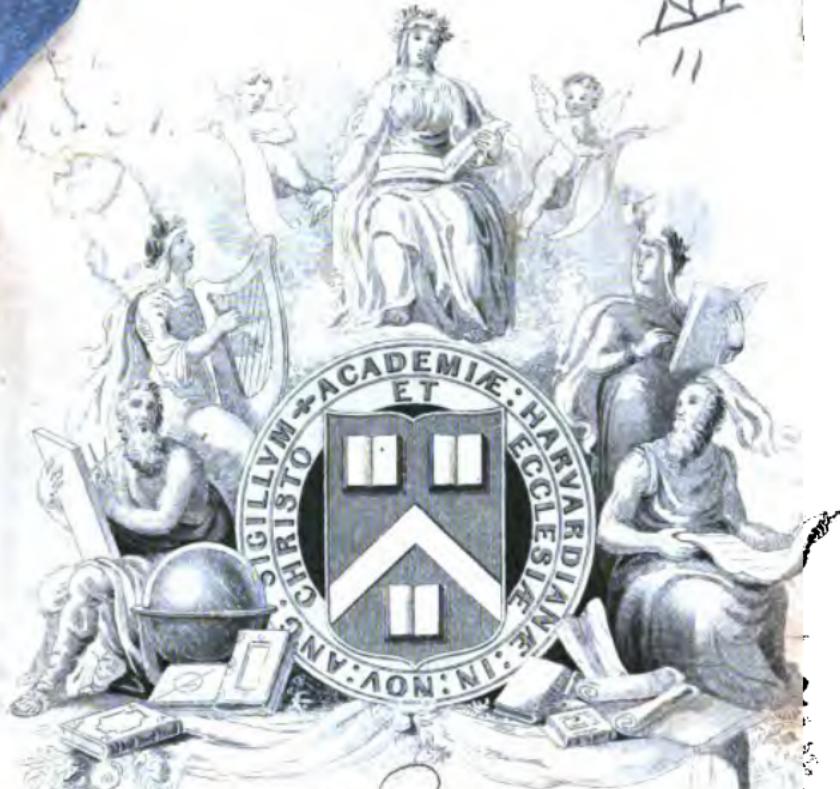
About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

Education
18.31
294A

Educ 1918.31.274 A

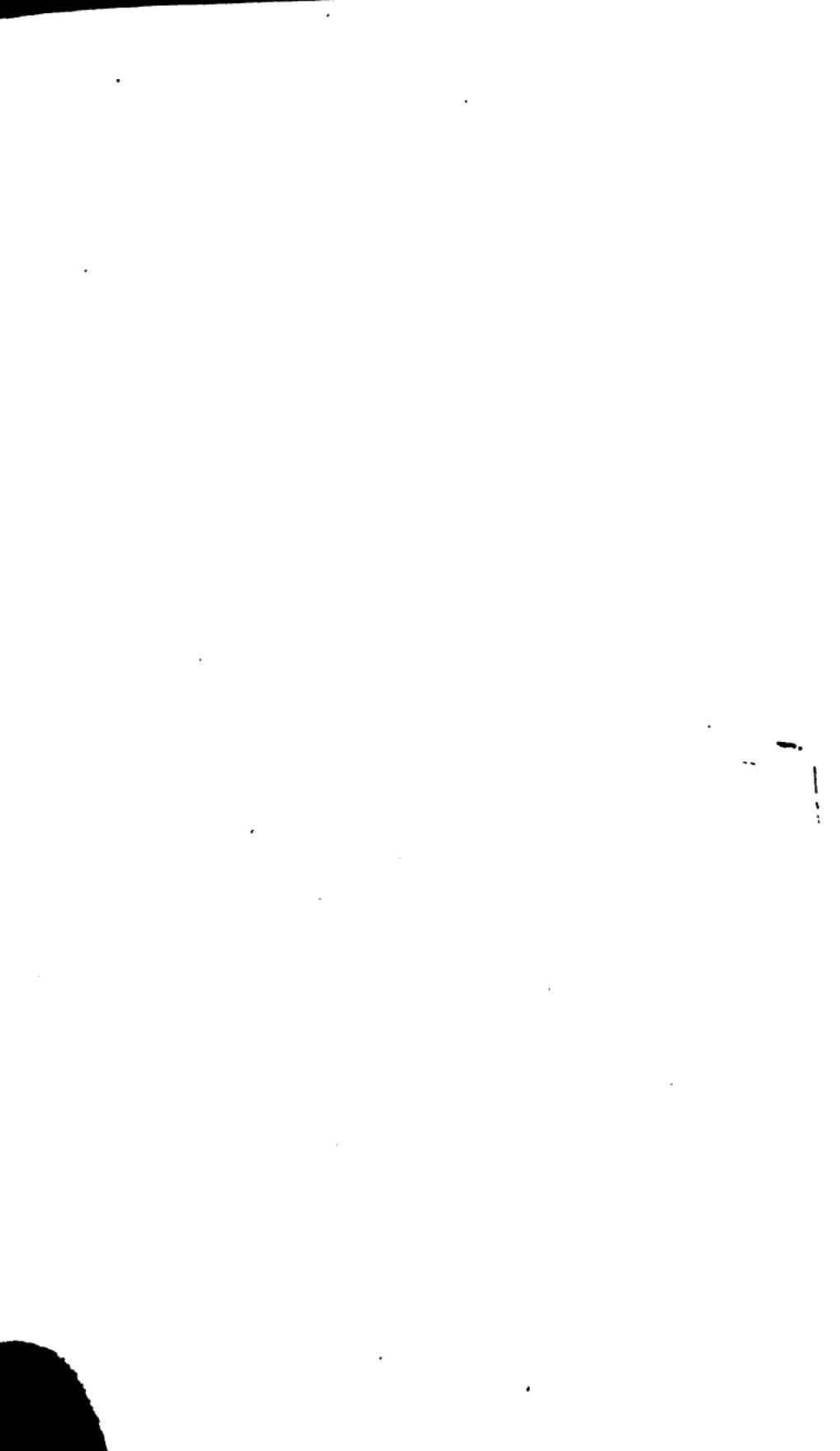
446
11



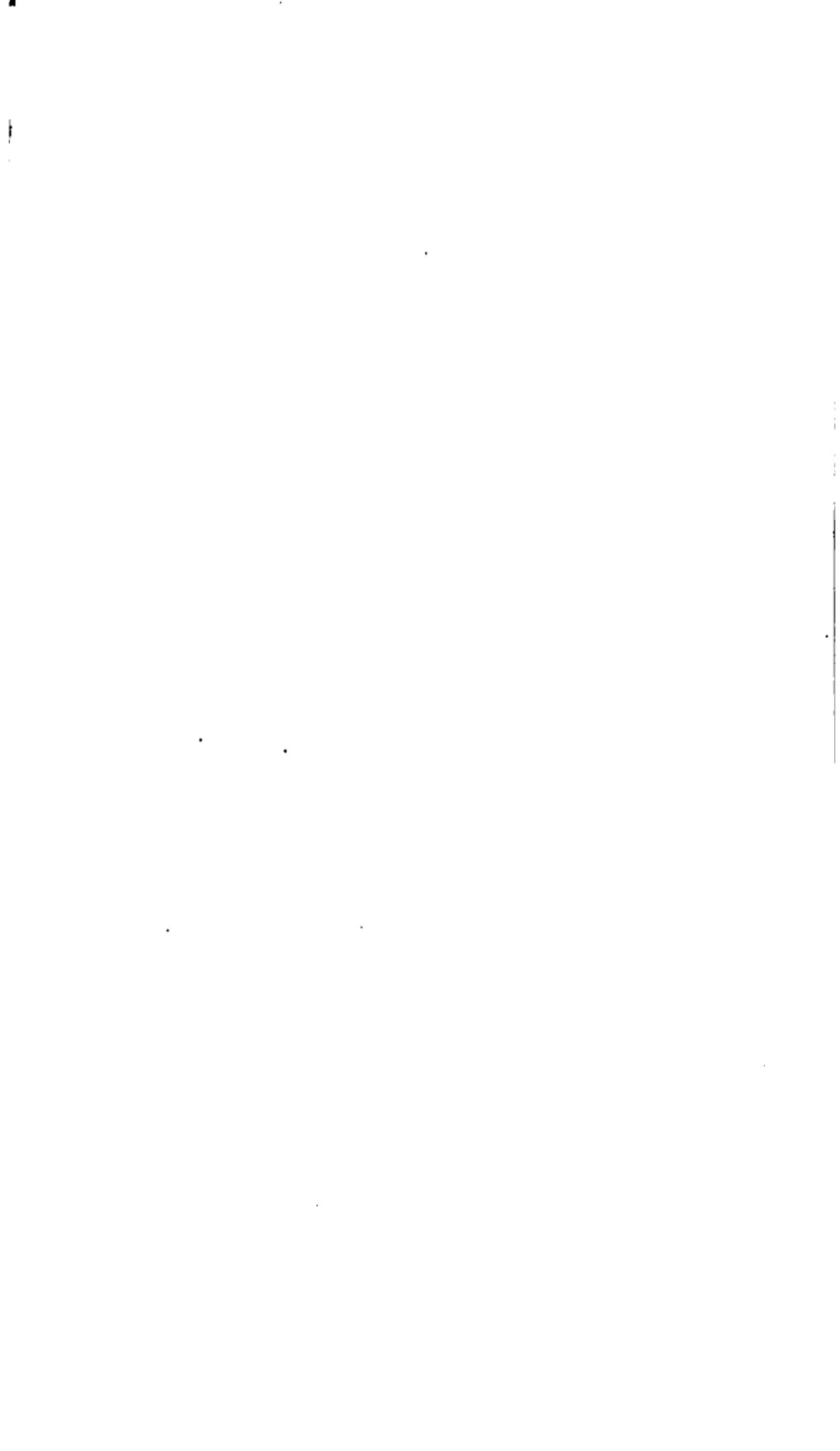
The gift of
Samuel A. Green, M.D.
of
Boston,
(Class of 1851).
Rec'd 22 Nov. 1858.



3 2044 097 065 619







H. Lawrence

FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN;

Upon a New Plan;

COMBINING

A B S T R A C T R U L E S,

WITH A

PROGRESSIVE SERIES OF PRACTICAL EXERCISES.

SECOND EDITION.

R2

BY CHARLES DEXTER CLEVELAND, A.M.
Professor of Languages in Dickinson College.

BOSTON:

CARTER, HENDEE AND BABCOCK.

BALTIMORE: CHARLES CARTER.

1831.

Educ T 918.31.294 A

~~5285,34~~

Educ T 918.31 1858 Nov. 22

~~Educ T 918.31.5~~ gift of

Sam. A. Green M.D.

Boston

BOUNDED JUN 19 1813

ENTERED, according to the Act of Congress, in the year 1831
by CARTER, HENDEE and BABCOCK, in the Clerk's office of the
District Court of Massachusetts.

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

FEELING the want of some simple, introductory work to the Latin language, for the younger class of learners, the author prepared the first edition of this little book for his own immediate use, while engaged in the instruction of youth. The public, however, having so far approved of the work as to call soon for a new edition, he has not failed to prepare it, and, by the introduction of many improvements, to render it still more worthy of approbation. He is aware that the present labour is a very humble one; a labour, from which neither profit nor fame can be expected; but, humble as it is, it will be richly repaid, if it shall facilitate the labours of the instructer, and lessen the difficulties of the youthful scholar in entering upon his classical studies.

Dickinson College, Carlisle, March 29, 1831.



ADVERTISEMENT.

In consequence of the author's residing at a distance from the press, he could not conveniently superintend the reading of the proofs. He therefore entrusted it to his friend Mr. Oliver W. Treadwell, whose critical care is evinced by the few errors that have been detected. Instructors are requested to correct the copies which they may give to their pupils, in conformity with the following list of errata: -

- Page 65, line 1st from top, for *eius* read *eorum*.
126, " 3d " for *miserēre* read *miserēri*.
140, " 4th " for *Cannæ* read *Cannārum*.
144, " 11th " for *Cethēgus* read *Cethēgus*.
145, " 8th " for *servītus* read *servīlus*.
148, " 6th " for *inflamāvit* read *inflammāvit*.
154, " 4th from bot. for *pisco* read *piscor*.
156, " 12th " for *admōdum* read *admōdum*.
167, " 9th from top, for *rhelōre* read *rhelōre*.

FIRST

LESSONS IN LATIN.

~~X~~ ORIGIN OF THE LANGUAGE.

Question. By what people, and when was the Latin language spoken?

Answer. By the Romans, about eighteen hundred years ago.

Who were the Romans?

A. They were the people who inhabited Rome, a city of Italy, in the southern part of Europe.

Q. Why is the Latin sometimes called a *dead language*?

A. Because it is not spoken by any nation now living, but was the language of a people, who, for many hundred years, have been extinct or dead.

PRONUNCIATION.

Q. How is the Latin language pronounced?

A. As it is not known how the Romans pronounced it, each of the modern nations of Europe follows the rules of its own language. The English, therefore, pronounce the Latin according to the principles of the English language.

Q. What do the curve mark w and the horizontal line — over the vowels mean?

A. The curve mark w over a vowel shows it to be short: the horizontal line — shows it to be long.

Q. How do these marks regulate the pronunciation?

A. In words of three syllables or more than three, if the ~~last~~ syllable but one, which is called *the penult*, be long, the accent is upon it, as *amābam*, where the accent is upon the ā: but if *the penult* have the short accent over it, the syllable before it, which is called the *antepenult*, is accentuated, as *hómīnis*, where the accent is on the first syllable.

Examples to be pronounced and explained by the scholar.

Sermōnis.

Amavērim.

Fuērunt.

Legebamīni.

Capitibus.

Pennārum.

~~M~~YERS.

Q. How many letters are there in the Latin language?

A. Twenty-five, which are the same as those in the English, with the exception of W, which the Latins do not use.

Q. How many of these are vowels?

A. Six; *a, e, i, o, u, y*, each of which makes a distinct sound by itself. The other letters are called consonants, which do not make a perfect sound without the aid of a vowel.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

Q. How many sorts of words, or *Parts of Speech* are there in the Latin language?

A. Nine: the *Noun*, the *Adjective*, the *Pronoun*, the *Verb*, the *Participle*, the *Adverb*, the *Preposition*, the *Interjection*, and the *Conjunction*.

27 *Amel*

NOUN.

Q. What is a *Noun*?

A. A *Noun* is the name of any person, place, or thing. Thus, *boy* is a *Noun*, because it is the name of a person; *school* is a *Noun*, as it is the name of a place; and *book* is a *Noun*, as it is the name of a thing.

Q. Do nouns undergo any change?

A. They do, on account of their *genders*, their *numbers*, and their *cases*.

GENDER.

Q. What is *gender*?

A. *Gender* is the distinction of objects with regard to their sex.

Q. How many *genders* have nouns?

A. Properly speaking, there are but two genders, the *masculine*, which is applied to names of men, or male beings, and the *feminine*, which is applied to names of women, or female beings. But those nouns which are neither *masculine* nor *feminine*, are called *neuter*; and those which are either masculine or feminine, according to the sense, are called *common*. Therefore there may be said to be four genders, the *masculine*, the *feminine*, the *neuter*, and the *common*.

NUMBER.

X Q. What is *number*?

A. *Number* is the distinction of objects whether as one, or more than one.

Q. How many *numbers* has a noun?

A. Two: the *singular* number, which is used when a single thing is spoken of; and the *plural* number, which is used when two things, or more than two things are spoken of.

See 1

Q. In how many places can you make *pennis*? Where
pennam? Where *pennarum*? Where *pennas*? *20th*

LATIN EXAMPLES FOR TRANSLATING.*

<i>Aræ.</i>	<i>Horam.</i>	<i>Rosæ.</i>	<i>Terra.</i>
<i>Bestia.</i>	<i>Luna.</i>	<i>Sagittam.</i>	<i>Undas.</i>
<i>Citharārum.</i>	<i>Oris.</i>	<i>Scholis.</i>	<i>Viārum.</i>
<i>Epistōlis.</i>	<i>Palpēbras.</i>	<i>Speluncæ.</i>	<i>Victimis.</i>
<i>Umbræ.</i>	<i>Satyram.</i>	<i>Muscas.</i>	<i>Literis.</i>

ENGLISH EXAMPLES TO BE RENDERED INTO LATIN. *20th*

a Girl.	in Chains.	of the Table.
O Victim.	of Plants.	with the Lyre.
by Poets.	Battles.	Life.
in the Sand.	to Envy.	by a Fable.
by Slander.	for Wings.	to Punishment.

* It is recommended, that when the scholar translates these nouns, he close his book, and that the instructor give out the word to him. He will then tell in what cases it can be found, and the meanings of it in the several cases respectively. In like manner the instructor will repeat the English nouns, for which the scholar will tell the Latin, with the number and case. *30th*

VOCABULARY OF NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Part 1st, Latin and English.

- Ara, *an altar.*
- Bestia, *a beast.*
- Cithara, *a harp.*
- Epistola, *an epistle.*
- Hora, *an hour.*
- Littera, *a letter.*
- Luna, *the moon.*
- Musca, *a fly.*
- Ora, *a coast.*
- Palpebra, *the eyelid.*
- Rosa, *a rose.*
- Sagitta, *an arrow.*
- Satyrus, *a satyr.*
- Schola, *a school.*
- Spelunca, *a cave.*
- Terra, *the earth.*
- Unda, *a wave.*
- Via, *a way.*
- Victima, *a victim.*
- Umbra, *a shadow.*

Part 2d, English and Latin.

- a Battle, *pugna.*
- a Chain, *catena.*
- Envy, *invidia.*
- a Fable, *fabula.*
- a Girl, *puella.*
- Life, *vita.*
- a Lyre, *lyra.*
- a Plant, *planta.*
- a Poet, *poeta.*
- a Punishment, *pena.*
- Sand, *arena.*
- Slander, *calumnia.*
- a Table, *tabula.*
- a Victim, *victima.*
- a Wing, *ala.*

SECOND DECLENSION.

Q. How do you distinguish nouns of the Second Declension?

A. By the genitive singular ending in *i*.

Q. In what do the nominatives singular of all nouns of this declension end?

A. They end in *er*, *ir*, *ur*, *us*, and *um*.

Q. Which of these are of the neuter gender?

A. Those which end in *um*.

Q. Of what gender are the rest?

A. The rest of the nouns, which end in *er*, *ir*, *ur*, and *us* are of the masculine gender.

Decline *Gener*, a son-in-law, masculine gender.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	gener,	a son-in-law,
<i>Gen.</i>	genéri,	of a son-in-law,
<i>Dat.</i>	genéro,	to or for a son-in-law,
<i>Acc.</i>	genérum,	a son-in-law,
<i>Voc.</i>	gener,	O son-in-law,
<i>Abl.</i>	genéro, with, from, in or by a son-in-law.	

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	genéri,	sons-in-law,
<i>Gen.</i>	generōrum,	of sons-in-law,
<i>Dat.</i>	genéris,	to or for sons-in-law,
<i>Acc.</i>	genérōs,	sons-in-law,
<i>Voc.</i>	genéri,	O sons-in-law,
<i>Abl.</i>	genéris, with, from, in or by sons-in law.	

LATIN EXAMPLES.

<i>Socéri,</i>	<i>Vir,</i>	<i>Viris.</i>
<i>Furciféros,</i>	<i>Presbyterōrum,</i>	

Decline Ager, *a field*, masculine gender.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	ager,	<i>a field,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	agri,	<i>of a field,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	agro,	<i>to or for a field,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	agrūm,	<i>a field,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	ager,	<i>O field,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	agro,	<i>with, from, in or by a field.</i>

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	agri,	<i>fields,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	agrōrum,	<i>of fields,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	agris,	<i>to or for fields,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	agros,	<i>fields,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	agri,	<i>O fields,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	agris,	<i>with, from, in or by fields.</i>

LATIN EXAMPLES.

Fabrōrum.	Colūbros.	Arbītris.
Magistri.	Ministro.	Aprum.
Alexandro.	Libri.	Auster.

—apt 11/10— Decline Domīnus, *a lord*, masculine gender.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	domīnus,	<i>a lord,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	domīni,	<i>of a lord,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	domīno,	<i>to or for a lord,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	domīnum,	<i>a lord,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	domīne,	<i>O lord,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	domīno,	<i>with, from, in or by a lord.</i>

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	domīni,	lords,
<i>Gen.</i>	dominōrum,	of lords,
<i>Dat.</i>	domīnis,	to or for lords,
<i>Acc.</i>	domīnos,	lords,
<i>Voc.</i>	domīni,	O lords,
<i>Abl.</i>	domīnis,	with, from, in or by lords.

LATIN EXAMPLES.

Agni.	Pontus.	Thesaurum.
Rivos.	Nimbos.	Ursōrum.
Ocūlis.	Fluvio.	Muris.
Popūlum.	Philosōphi.	Scopūle.

ENGLISH EXAMPLES.

Buffaloes.	for a Bushel.	a Hat.
in Sleep.	to a Rock.	from the Arm.
of a Slave.	O Messengers.	with the Oars.
O Master.	of an Oven.	in Autumn.

Decline Regnum, *a kingdom*, neuter gender.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	regnum,	a kingdom,
<i>Gen.</i>	regni,	of a kingdom,
<i>Dat.</i>	regno,	to or for a kingdom,
<i>Acc.</i>	regnum,	& kingdom,
<i>Voc.</i>	regnum,	O kingdom,
<i>Abl.</i>	regno,	with, from, in or by a kingdom.

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	regna,	kingdoms,
<i>Gen.</i>	regnōrum,	of kingdoms,
<i>Dat.</i>	regnis,	to or for kingdoms,
<i>Acc.</i>	regna,	kingdoms,
<i>Voc.</i>	regna,	O kingdoms,
<i>Abl.</i>	regnis,	with, from, in or by kingdoms.

LATIN EXAMPLES.

Antro.	Imperia.	Vincūla.	Venēnum.
Delūbri.	Labiōrum.	Tecto.	Castrā.
Scutum.	Templis.	Sigillum.	Bellōrum.

ENGLISH EXAMPLES.

for Judgment.	of Slavery.	in Wars.
with a Gift.	the Doors.	for Assistance.
in the Bosom.	O Destruction.	in Chains.
Vices.	of Dreams.	to the Town.

VOCABULARY OF NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

Part 1st, Latin and English.

- Agnus, *a lamb.*
 Alexander, *Alexander.*
 Antrum, *a cave.*
 Aper, *a wild boar.*
 Arbiter, *a judge.*
 Auster, *the south wind.*
 Bellum, *war.*
 Castrum, *a castle.*
 Coluber, *a snake.*
 Delubrum, *a temple.*
 Faber, *a workman.*
 Fluvius, *a river.*
 Furcifer, *a villain.*
 Imperium, *an empire.*
 Labium, *a lip.*
 Liber, *a book.*
 Magister, *a master.*
 Minister, *a servant.*
 Murus, *a wall.*
 Nimbus, *a cloud.*
 Oculus, *the eye.*
 Philosopus, *a philosopher.*
 Pontus, *the sea.*
 Populus, *the people.*
 Presbyter, *an elder.*
 Rivus, *a rivulet.*
 Scopulus, *a rock.*
 Scutum, *a shield.*
 Sigillum, *a seal.*
 Socrer, *a father-in-law.*
 Tectum, *a roof.*
 Templum, *a temple.*
 Thesaurus, *a treasure.*
 Ursus, *a bear.*
 Venenum, *poison.*
 Vinculum, *a chain.*
 Vir, *a man.*

Part 2d, English and Latin.

- the Arm, *lacertus.*
 Assistance, *auxilium.*
 Autumn, *autumnus.*
 the Bosom, *gremium.*
 a Buffalo, *urus.*
 a Bushel, *modius.*
 a Chain, *vinculum.*
 Destruction, *exitium.*
 a Door, *ostium.*
 a Dream, *somnium.*
 a Gift, *donum.*
 a Hat, *pileus.*
 Judgment, *judicium.*
 a Master, *herus.*
 a Messenger, *nuntius.*
 an Oar, *remus.*
 an Oven, *furnus.*
 a Rock, *scopulus.*
 a Slave, *servus.*
 Slavery, *servitium.*
 Sleep, *somnus.*
 a Town, *oppidum.*
 Vice, *vitium.*
 War, *bellum.*

THIRD DECLENSION.

Q. How do you distinguish nouns of the Third Declension?

A. By the genitive singular ending in *is*.

NOUNS ENDING IN O.

Decline *Sermo*, *a speech*, masculine gender.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Sermo</i> ,	<i>a speech</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Sermōnis</i> ,	<i>of a speech</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Sermōni</i> ,	<i>to or for a speech</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Sermōnem</i> ,	<i>a speech</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Sermo</i> ,	<i>O speech</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Sermōne</i> ,	<i>from, in, by or with a speech</i> .

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Sermōnes</i> ,	<i>speeches</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Sermōnum</i> ,	<i>of speeches</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Sermonībus</i> ,	<i>to or for speeches</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Sermōnes</i> ,	<i>speeches</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Sermōnes</i> ,	<i>O speeches</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Sermonībus</i> ,	<i>from, in, by or with speeches</i> .

Q. How is the genitive of *Sermo* formed?

A. By adding *nis* to the nominative.

LATIN EXAMPLES.

<i>Latrōnes.</i>	<i>Statiōni.</i>	<i>Rebelliōnes.</i>
<i>Bubo.</i>	<i>Conciōnum.</i>	<i>Dictionībus.</i>
<i>Regiōne.</i>	<i>Pavōnem.</i>	<i>Lectiōne.</i>
<i>Opinionībus.</i>	<i>Seditiōnis.</i>	<i>Religiōni.</i>

Decline Arundo, *a reed*, feminine gender.*Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Arundo,	<i>a reed,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Arundinis,	<i>of a reed,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Arundini,	<i>to or for a reed,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Arundinem,	<i>a reed,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Arundo,	<i>O reed,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Arundine,	<i>from, by or with a reed.</i>

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Arundines,	<i>reeds,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Arundinum,	<i>of reeds,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Arundinibus,	<i>to or for reeds,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Arundines,	<i>reeds,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Arundines,	<i>O reeds,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Arundinibus,	<i>from, by or with reeds.</i>

Q. How is the genitive of Arundo formed?

A. By changing *o* into *inis*.

Swallows.	for Health.	*on Hinges.
in Darkness.	of Virgins.	of a Spade.
with Fear.	Hail.	O Virgin.

NOUNS ENDING IN *A*. *apt. 202*

Q. Of what gender are all nouns ending in *a*, of the third declension?

A. Of the neuter gender.

Q. How do they form the genitive?

A. By adding *tis* to the nominative; as *dogma*, genitive *dogmatis*.

* The English preposition *on* is rendered by the ablative.

Decline *Dogma*, *an opinion*, neuter gender.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Dogma,</i>	<i>an opinion,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dogmatis,</i>	<i>of an opinion,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Dogmati,</i>	<i>to or for an opinion,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Dogma,</i>	<i>an opinion,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Dogma,</i>	<i>O opinion,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Dogmate,</i>	<i>with, from or by an opinion.</i>

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Dogmata,</i>	<i>opinions,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dogmatum,</i>	<i>of opinions,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Dogmatibus,</i>	<i>to or for opinions,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Dogmata,</i>	<i>opinions,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Dogmata,</i>	<i>O opinions,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Dogmatibus,</i>	<i>with, from or by opinions</i>

LATIN EXAMPLES.

<i>Poematibus.</i>	<i>Poemati.</i>	<i>Schemata.</i>
<i>Diploma.</i>	<i>Numismatis.</i>	<i>Strategematus.</i>
<i>Schemata.</i>	<i>Ænigmatum.</i>	

4 NOUNS WHICH END IN *E*. M 23

- Q. Of what gender is this class of nouns?
- A. Nouns which end in *e* are of the neuter gender.
- Q. How do they form the genitive?
- A. By changing *e* into *is*, as Nom. *sedile*, Gen. *sedilis*.

Decline *Sedile*, *a seat*, neuter gender.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Sedile,</i>	<i>a seat,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Sedilis,</i>	<i>of a seat,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Sedili,</i>	<i>to or for a seat,</i>

<i>Acc.</i>	Sedile,	<i>a seat,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Sedile,	<i>O seat,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Sedili,	<i>with, from or by a seat.</i>

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Sedilia,	<i>seats,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Sedilium,	<i>of seats,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Sedilibus,	<i>to or for seats,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Sedilia,	<i>seats,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Sedilia,	<i>O seats,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Sedilibus,	<i>with, from or by seats.</i>

ENGLISH EXAMPLES.

<i>O Shield.</i>	with Towels.	Stables.
in a Couch.	of a Room.	in the Sheep-fold.

NOUNS ENDING IN *MEN*.

- Q.* Of what gender are nouns ending in *men*?
A. Of the neuter gender.
Q. How do they form the genitive?
A. By changing *en* into *inis*, as *flumen*, *fluminis*.

Decline *Flumen*, *a river*, neuter gender.*Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Flumen,	<i>a river,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Fluminis,	<i>of a river,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Flumini,	<i>to or for a river,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Flumen,	<i>a river,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Flumen,	<i>O river,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Flumine,	<i>with, from or by a river.</i>

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Flumina,	<i>rivers,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Fluminum,	<i>of rivers,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Fluminibus,	<i>to or for rivers,</i>

<i>Acc.</i>	Flumīna,	rivers,
<i>Voc.</i>	Flumīna,	O rivers,
<i>Abl.</i>	Fluminībus,	with, from or by rivers.

LATIN EXAMPLES.

Foraminībus.	Lumīni.	Lumīne.
Crimen.	Agmīna.	Ominībus.
Cacumīnis.	Nomīnum.	Carcīnis.

NOUNS ENDING IN *ER* AND *OR*.

Q. Of what gender are nouns ending in *er* and *or*?

A. Generally masculine, though some are of the neuter gender.

Q. How do they form the genitive?

A. By adding *is* to the nominative, as *dolor*, *dolōris*.

Decline *Dolor*, *pain*, masculine gender.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Dolor,	pain,
<i>Gen.</i>	Dolōris,	of pain,
<i>Dat.</i>	Dolōri,	to or for pain,
<i>Acc.</i>	Dolōrem,	pain,
<i>Voc.</i>	Dolor,	O pain,
<i>Abl.</i>	Dolōre,	with, from or by pain.

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Dolōres,	pains,
<i>Gen.</i>	Dolōrum,	of pains,
<i>Dat.</i>	Dolōribus,	to or for pains,
<i>Acc.</i>	Dolōres,	pains,
<i>Voc.</i>	Dolōres,	O pains,
<i>Abl.</i>	Dolōribus,	with, from or by pains

LATIN EXAMPLES.

Rumōres.	Debitoribus.	Pastoribus.
Pudor.	Sopōre.	Aggēris.
Pastōris.	Rumōrum.	Splendōre.
Lectōrem.	Honōri.	Colōri.

NOUNS ENDING IN *AS*.

Q. Of what gender are these nouns?

A. Feminine gender.

Q. How do they form their genitive?

A. By changing *s* into *tis*; as *ætas*, *ætatis*, *an age*.

Decline *Ætas*, *an age*, feminine gender.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Ætas,</i>	<i>an age,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Ætatis,</i>	<i>of an age,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Ætati,</i>	<i>to or for an age,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Ætatem,</i>	<i>an age,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Ætas,</i>	<i>O age,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Ætate,</i>	<i>with, in or by an age.</i>

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Ætates,</i>	<i>ages,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Ætatum,</i>	<i>of ages,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Ætatibus,</i>	<i>to or for ages,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Ætates,</i>	<i>ages,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Ætates,</i>	<i>O ages,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Ætatum,</i>	<i>with, in or by ages.</i>

Q. How do nouns ending in *as* and *ns* form the genitive plural?

A. They form it regularly in *ium*; as *ætates*, *ætatum*: *parentes*, *parentium*. But generally the *i* is omitted, as *parentes*, *parentum*: *ætates*, *ætatum*.

Q. What does the circumflex mark ^ over the *u* mean?

A. That the two syllables *iūm* are contracted into one syllable, *ām*.

ENGLISH EXAMPLES.

in the Summer.	for Power.	of the Will.
with Pleasures.	of Truth.	of Pleasures.

NOUNS ENDING IN *ES*.

Q. How do these nouns form the genitive?

A. Commonly by changing *es* into *is*, as *ruples*, *rupis*: but there are very many nouns ending in *es*, that form the genitive differently.

Decline *Rupes*, *a rock*, feminine gender.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Rupes</i> ,	<i>a rock</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Rupis</i> ,	<i>of a rock</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Rupi</i> ,	<i>to or for a rock</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Rupem</i> ,	<i>a rock</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Rupes</i> ,	<i>O rock</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Rupe</i> ,	<i>by or on a rock</i> .

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Rupes</i> ,	<i>rocks</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Rupium</i> ,	<i>of rocks</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Rupibus</i> ,	<i>to or for rocks</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Rupes</i> ,	<i>rocks</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Rupes</i> ,	<i>O rocks</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Rupibus</i> ,	<i>by or on rocks</i> .

LATIN EXAMPLES.

<i>Clade.</i>	<i>Nubium.</i>	<i>Famis.</i>
<i>Struībus.</i>	<i>Vulpes.</i>	<i>Palumbem.</i>
<i>Sudi.</i>		

Q. How do some other nouns ending in *es* form the genitive?

A. By changing *es* into *itis*, as *ales*, *a bird*, gen. *alitis*, *of a bird*; *miles*, *a soldier*; gen. *militis*, *of a soldier*.

NOUNS ENDING IN *IS*.

Q. What is the genitive of nouns in *is*?

A. The same as the nominative.

Q. How are they declined?

A. Like *rupes*, which has been declined before.

Decline *Vitis*, *a vine*, feminine gender.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Vitis,</i>	<i>a vine,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Vitis,</i>	<i>of a vine,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Viti,</i>	<i>to or for a vine,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Vitem,</i>	<i>a vine,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Vitis,</i>	<i>O vine,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Vite.</i>	<i>with, from or by a vine.</i>

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Vites,</i>	<i>vines,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Vitium,</i>	<i>of vines,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Vitibus,</i>	<i>to or for vines,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Vites,</i>	<i>vines,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Vites,</i>	<i>O vines,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Vitibus,</i>	<i>with, from, in or by vines.</i>

LATIN EXAMPLES.

<i>Apium.</i>	<i>Colli.</i>	<i>Vallis.</i>
<i>Classibus.</i>	<i>Ense.</i>	<i>Unguem.</i>
<i>Mense.</i>	<i>Vestium.</i>	

NOUNS ENDING IN *US*.

Q. Of what gender are nouns ending in *us*?

A. They are generally of the neuter gender.

Q. How do they form the genitive?

A. They form it variously. Some change *us* into *ōris*, as *corpus, a body; Gen. corpōris, of a body*. Others change *us* into *čris*, as, *munus, a gift; Gen. munēris, of a gift*. And others change *s* into *dis* or *tis*; as *pecus, a sheep; Gen. pecūdis, of a sheep: servitus, slavery; Gen. servitūtis, of slavery*.

Decline *Opus, a work*, neuter gender.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Opus,</i>	<i>a work,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Opēris,</i>	<i>of a work,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Opěri,</i>	<i>to or for a work,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Opus,</i>	<i>a work,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Opus,</i>	<i>O work,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Opěre,</i>	<i>with, from or by a work.</i>

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Opěra,</i>	<i>works,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Opěrum,</i>	<i>of works,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Operib⁹s,</i>	<i>to or for works,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Opěra,</i>	<i>works,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Opěra,</i>	<i>O works,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Operib⁹s,</i>	<i>with, from or by works.</i>

LATIN EXAMPLES.

<i>Munēre.</i>	<i>Siděri.</i>	<i>Oněrum.</i>
<i>Sidus.</i>	<i>Vulnerib⁹s.</i>	<i>Scelěra.</i>
<i>Funēris.</i>	<i>Ponděre.</i>	

NOUNS ENDING IN *NS, RS, PS, AND BS.*

Q. How is the genitive of these nouns formed?

A. By changing *s* into *is* or *tis*; as *trabs, a beam; Gen. trabis, of a beam; pars, a part; Gen. partis, of a part.*

Decline *Parens*, *a parent*, common gender.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Parens,</i>	<i>a parent,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Parentis,</i>	<i>of a parent,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Parenti,</i>	<i>to or for a parent,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Parentem,</i>	<i>a parent,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Parens,</i>	<i>O parent,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Parente,</i>	<i>with, from or by a parent.</i>

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Parentes,</i>	<i>parents,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Parentūm,</i>	<i>of parents,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Parentib⁹s,</i>	<i>to or for parents,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Parentes,</i>	<i>parents,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Parentes,</i>	<i>O parents,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Parentib⁹s,</i>	<i>with, from or by parents.</i>

LATIN EXAMPLES.

<i>Dente.</i>	<i>Fontib⁹s.</i>	<i>Pontis.</i>
<i>Sepem.</i>	<i>Rudentis.</i>	<i>Fons.</i>
<i>Montūm.</i>	<i>Serpenti.</i>	

NOUNS ENDING IN *T*.

Q. Is this a large class of nouns?

A. There is but one *simple* noun in T in the Latin language, which is of the neuter gender.

Decline it.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Caput,</i>	<i>a head,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Capiti⁹s,</i>	<i>of a head,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Capiti⁹,</i>	<i>to or for a head,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Caput,</i>	<i>a head,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Caput,</i>	<i>O head,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Capiti⁹,</i>	<i>with, from or by a head.</i>

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Capīta,	heads,
<i>Gen.</i>	Capītūm,	of heads,
<i>Dat.</i>	Capītībus,	to or for heads,
<i>Acc.</i>	Capīta,	heads,
<i>Voc.</i>	Capīta,	O heads,
<i>Abl.</i>	Capītibus,	with, from or by heads.

NOUNS ENDING IN X.

Q. How is the genitive of these nouns formed?

A. By changing *x* into *cis*, as *lux*, *light*; Gen. *lucis*, of light.

Decline Vox, the voice, feminine gender.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Vox,	the voice,
<i>Gen.</i>	Vocis,	of the voice,
<i>Dat.</i>	Voci,	to or for the voice,
<i>Acc.</i>	Vocem,	the voice,
<i>Voc.</i>	Vox,	O voice,
<i>Abl.</i>	Voce,	with, from or by the voice.

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Voces,	voices,
<i>Gen.</i>	Vocum,	of voices,
<i>Dat.</i>	Vocībus,	to or for voices,
<i>Acc.</i>	Voces,	voices,
<i>Voc.</i>	Voces,	O voices,
<i>Abl.</i>	Vocībus,	with, from or by voices.

LATIN EXAMPLES.

Pacis.	Salīci.	Mercem.
Cervī em.	Face.	Nuces.
Radicībus.	Cornīcum.	Radīce.

VOCABULARY OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Part 1st, Latin and English.

Ænigma , neut. <i>a riddle.</i>	Nux , fem. <i>a nut.</i>
Agger , masc. <i>a rampart.</i>	Omen , neut. <i>an omen.</i>
Agmen , neut. <i>an army.</i>	Onus , neut. <i>a burden.</i>
Apis , fem. <i>a bee.</i>	Opinio , fem. <i>an opinion.</i>
Bubo , masc. <i>an owl.</i>	Palumbes , com. <i>a pigeon.</i>
Cacūmen , neut. <i>the top.</i>	Pastor , masc. <i>a shepherd.</i>
Carmen , neut. <i>a song.</i>	Pavo , masc. <i>a peacock.</i>
Cervix , fem. <i>the neck.</i>	Pax , fem. <i>peace.</i>
Clades , fem. <i>a defeat.</i>	Poēma , neut. <i>a poem.</i>
Classis , fem. <i>a fleet.</i>	Pondus , neut. <i>a weight.</i>
Collis , masc. <i>a hill.</i>	Pons , masc. <i>a bridge.</i>
Color , masc. <i>a colour.</i>	Pudor , masc. <i>shame.</i>
Concio , fem. <i>an assembly.</i>	Radix , fem. <i>a root.</i>
Cornix , fem. <i>a crow.</i>	Rebellio , fem. <i>a rebellion.</i>
Crimen , neut. <i>a crime.</i>	Regio , fem. <i>a country.</i>
Debitor , masc. <i>a debtor.</i>	Religio , fem. <i>religion.</i>
Dens , masc. <i>a tooth.</i>	Rudens , com. <i>a cable.</i>
Dictio , fem. <i>a word.</i>	Rumor , masc. <i>a report.</i>
Diplōma , neut. <i>a charter.</i>	Salix , fem. <i>a willow.</i>
Ensis , masc. <i>a sword.</i>	Scelus , neut. <i>a crime.</i>
Fames , fem. <i>hunger.</i>	Schema , neut. <i>a scheme.</i>
Fax , fem. <i>a torch.</i>	Seditio , fem. <i>a mutiny.</i>
Fons , masc. <i>a well.</i>	Seps , fem. <i>a hedge.</i>
Forāmen , neut. <i>a hole.</i>	Serpens , com. <i>a serpent.</i>
Funus , neut. <i>a funeral.</i>	Sidus , neut. <i>a star.</i>
Honor , masc. <i>honor.</i>	Sopor , masc. <i>sleep.</i>
Latro , masc. <i>a robber.</i>	Splendor , masc. <i>brightness.</i>
Lectio , fem. <i>a lesson.</i>	Statio , fem. <i>a station.</i>
Lector , masc. <i>a reader.</i>	Strategēma , neut. <i>an artifice.</i>
Lumen , neut. <i>light.</i>	Strues , fem. <i>a heap.</i>
Mensis , masc. <i>a month.</i>	Sudes , fem. <i>a stake.</i>
Merx , fem. <i>merchandise.</i>	Unguis , masc. <i>a nail.</i>
Mons , masc. <i>a mountain.</i>	Vallis , fem. <i>a valley.</i>
Munus , neut. <i>a gift.</i>	Vestis , fem. <i>a garment.</i>
Nomen , neut. <i>a name.</i>	Vulnus , neut. <i>a wound.</i>
Nubes , fem. <i>a cloud.</i>	Vulpes , fem. <i>a fox.</i>
Numisma , neut. <i>a coin.</i>	

VOCABULARY OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Part 2d, English and Latin.

a Couch, <i>cubile</i> , neut.	a Shield, <i>ancile</i> , neut.
Darkness, <i>caligo</i> , fem.	a Spade, <i>ligo</i> , masc.
Fear, <i>formido</i> , fem.	a Stable, <i>equile</i> , neut.
Hail, <i>grando</i> , fem.	Summer, <i>aestas</i> , fem.
Health, <i>valetudo</i> , fem.	a Swallow, <i>hirundo</i> , fem.
a Hinge, <i>cardo</i> , masc.	a Towel, <i>mantile</i> , neut.
Pleasure, <i>voluptas</i> , fem.	Truth, <i>veritas</i> , fem.
Power, <i>potestas</i> , fem.	a Virgin, <i>virgo</i> , fem.
a Room, <i>conclave</i> , neut.	Will, <i>voluntas</i> , fem.
a Sheep-fold, <i>ovile</i> , neut.	

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Q. In what syllables do the nominatives of nouns of the fourth declension end?

A. In *us* and *u*.

Q. How can you tell a noun of the *fourth* declension?

A. By the genitive singular ending in *us*.

Q. Of what gender are nouns ending in *us*?

A. Masculine gender.

* **Q.** Of what gender are nouns ending in *u*?

A. Of the neuter gender, and in the singular number they are not declined.

Q. What do you mean when you say they are not declined?

A. That all the six cases are the same.

Decline *Fructus*, *fruit*, masculine gender

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Fructus,	<i>fruit,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Fructūs,	<i>of fruit,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Fructui,	<i>to or for fruit,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Fructum,	<i>fruit,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Fructus,	<i>O fruit,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Fructu,	<i>with, from or by fruit.</i>

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Fructus,	<i>fruits,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Fructuum,	<i>of fruits,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Fructibus,	<i>to or for fruits,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Fructus,	<i>fruits,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Fructus,	<i>O fruits,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Fructibus,	<i>with, from or by fruits.</i>

LATIN EXAMPLES.

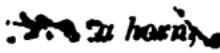
Risu.	Venātu.	Gemītus.
Ictībus.	Sumptum.	Eventu.
Fluctui.	Motuum.	Exercītūs.

ENGLISH EXAMPLES.

in a Chariot.	Expenses.	for Gain.
to a Nod.	in Assemblies.	with Groans.
of a Complaint.	Singing.	with Success.

Decline *Cornu*, *a horn*, neuter gender.

Singular number.

Nom.	Cornu,	 <i>the horn</i> ,
Gen.	Cornu,	<i>of a horn</i> ,
Dat.	Cornu,	<i>to or for a horn</i> ,
Acc.	Cornu,	<i>a horn</i> ,
Voc.	Cornu,	<i>O horn</i> ,
Abl.	Cornu,	<i>with, by or in a horn</i> .

Plural number.

Nom.	Cornua,	<i>horns</i> ,
Gen.	Cornuum,	<i>of horns</i> ,
Dat.	Cornībus,	<i>to or for horns</i> ,
Acc.	Cornua,	<i>horns</i> ,
Voc.	Cornua,	<i>O horns</i> ,
Abl.	Cornībus,	<i>with, by or in horns</i> .

Decline *Domus*, *a house*, feminine gender.

Singular number.

Nom.	Domus,	<i>a house</i> ,
Gen.	Domūs or domi,	<i>of a house</i> ,
Dat.	Domui or domo,	<i>to or for a house</i> ,
Acc.	Domum,	<i>a house</i> ,
Voc.	Domus,	<i>O house</i> ,
Abl.	Domo,	<i>with, from, in or by a house</i> .

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Domus,	<i>houses,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Domōrum, or domuum,	<i>of houses,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Domībus,	<i>to or for houses,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Domos or domus,	<i>houses,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Domus,	<i>O houses,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Domībus,	<i>with, from, in or by houses.</i>

Q. What is there peculiar to Domus?

A. It is both of the *second* and *fourth* declensions; that is, it is declined like nouns of each of these declensions.

May 20th.

3

VOCABULARY OF NOUNS OF THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

Part 1st, Latin and English.

- Eventus, masc. *an event.*
- Exercitus, masc. *an army.*
- Fluctus, masc. *a wave.*
- Gemitus, masc. *a groan.*
- Ictus, masc. *a stroke.*
- Motus, masc. *a motion.*
- Risus, masc. *laughter.*
- Sumptus, masc. *expense.*
- Venatus, masc. *hunting.*

Part 2d, English and Latin.

- an Assembly, *cetus*, masc.
- a Chariot, *currus*, masc.
- a Complaint, *questus*, masc.
- Expense, *sumptus*, masc.
- Gain, *quæstus*, masc.
- a Groan, *gemitus*, masc.
- a Nod, *nodus*, masc.
- Singing, *cantus*, masc.
- Success, *successus*, masc.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Q. In what do the nominatives of nouns of the fifth declension end?

A. They end in *es*, and are of the feminine gender.

Q. How do you distinguish a noun of this declension?

A. By the genitive singular ending in *ei*.

Decline *Res*, *a thing*, feminine gender.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Res,</i>	<i>a thing,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Rēi,</i>	<i>of a thing,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Rēi,</i>	<i>to or for a thing,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Rem,</i>	<i>a thing,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Res,</i>	<i>O thing,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Re,</i>	<i>from, with or by a thing.</i>

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Res,</i>	<i>things,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Rērum,</i>	<i>of things,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Rēbus,</i>	<i>to or for things,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Res,</i>	<i>things,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Res,</i>	<i>O things,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Rēbus,</i>	<i>with, from or by things.</i>

Q. In how many places can you make *res*? and what places are they? In how many *rēi*? in how many *rēbus*?

ADJECTIVES.

Q. What is an adjective?

A. An adjective is a word which is always joined to some noun, to define or describe it; as a *good boy*, a *wise man*, ~~a~~ *swif* horse. Here the words *good*, *wise* and *swif* are adjectives, because they give the character of the nouns to which they are joined.

Q. How many sorts of adjectives are there?

A. There are two sorts; those of the first and second declension, and those of the third declension.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

Q. How are adjectives of the first and second declension declined, or varied?

A. The masculine is declined like a masculine noun of the *second* declension, as *domīnus*; the feminine is declined like a feminine noun of the *first* declension, as *penna*; and the neuter is declined like a neuter noun of the *second* declension, as *regnum*.

Decline Bonus, which means *good*.

Singular number.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Bonus,	bona,	bonum,
<i>Gen.</i>	Boni,	bonæ,	boni,
<i>Dat.</i>	Bono,	bonæ,	bono,
<i>Acc.</i>	Bonum,	bonam,	bonum,
<i>Voc.</i>	Bone,	bona,	bonum,
<i>Abl.</i>	Bono,	bonâ,	bono.

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Boni,	bonæ,	bona,
<i>Gen.</i>	Bonōrum,	bonārum,	bonōrum,
<i>Dat.</i>	Bonis,	bonis,	bonis,
<i>Acc.</i>	Bonos,	bonas,	bona,
<i>Voc.</i>	Boni,	bonæ,	bona,
<i>Abl.</i>	Bonis,	bonis,	bonis.

Fig. 24. **Q.** Why are the endings of adjectives changed in this manner?

A. In order to agree with the nouns to which they are joined, in gender, number and case.

Q. Vary or decline the *masculine* gender of *bonus*, in all the cases, and join *vir*, *a man*, to it; which also is of the masculine gender.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Bonus vir,	<i>a good man,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Boni viri,	<i>of a good man,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Bono viro,	<i>to, or for a good man,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Bonum virum,	<i>a good man,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Bone vir,	<i>O good man,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Bono viro,	<i>with a good man.</i>

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Boni viri,	<i>good men,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Bonōrum virōrum,	<i>of good men,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Bonis viris,	<i>to, or for good men,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Bonos viros,	<i>good men,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Boni viri,	<i>O good men,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Bonis viris,	<i>with good men.</i>

Q. Now vary the *feminine* of *bonus*, in all its cases, to agree with *penna*, which is *feminine*. Flag

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Bonā penna,	<i>a good pen,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Bonē pennæ,	<i>of a good pen,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Bonē pennæ,	<i>to or for a good pen,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Bonam pennam,	<i>a good pen,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Boua penna,	<i>O good pen,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Bonā pennā,	<i>with a good pen.</i>

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Bonē pennæ,	<i>good pens,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Bonārum pennārum,	<i>of good pens,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Bonis pennis,	<i>to or for good pens,</i>

<i>Acc.</i>	Bonas pennas,	good pens,
<i>Voc.</i>	Bonæ pennæ,	O good pens,
<i>Abl.</i>	Bonis pennis,	with good pens.

Q. Now decline the *neuter* gender of *bonus*, in all its cases, to agree with *negotium*, which also is *neuter*.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Bonum negotium,	a good thing,
<i>Gen.</i>	Boni negotii,	of a good thing,
<i>Dat.</i>	Bono negotio,	to or for a good thing,
<i>Acc.</i>	Bonum negotium,	a good thing,
<i>Voc.</i>	Bonum negotium,	O good thing.
<i>Abl.</i>	Beno negotio,	with a good thing.

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Bona negotia,	good things,
<i>Gen.</i>	Bonorum negotiorum,	of good things,
<i>Dat.</i>	Bonis negotiis,	to or for good things,
<i>Acc.</i>	Bona negotia,	good things,
<i>Voc.</i>	Bona negotia,	O good things,
<i>Abl.</i>	Bonis negotiis,	with good things.

[Let rule 2d now be committed to memory by the pupil.*]

Examples of adjectives of the first and second declension agreeing with their substantives. [The vocabulary is at the end of the pronouns.]

Carus amīcus.	Propria nomīna.
Formōsa filia.	Divinārum legum.
Pretiōsum aurum.	Superbos pavōnes.
Fidi servi.	Ultimam spem.
Bellæ fœminæ.	Caros amīcos.
Pretiōso auro.	Fidis servis.
Alexandrum magnum.	

* The pupil cannot fail now to understand the rule, which in common systems of grammar so much puzzles him, "an adjective agrees with its substantive in *gender, number and case*."

Q. What other adjectives are there of the first and second declension?

A. Some of the first and second declension end in *er*.

Decline *Tener*, *tender*, which belongs to this class.

Singular number.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Tener,	tenēra,	tenērum,
<i>Gen.</i>	Tenēri,*	tenēræ,	tenēri,
<i>Dat.</i>	Tenēro,	tenēræ,	tenēro,
<i>Acc.</i>	Tenērum,	tenēram,	tenērum,
<i>Voc.</i>	Tener,	tenēra,	tenērum,
<i>Abl.</i>	Tenēro,	tenērā,	tenēro.

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Tenēri,	tenēræ,	tenēra,
<i>Gen.</i>	Tenerōrum,	tenerārum,	tenerōrum,
<i>Dat.</i>	Tenēris,	tenēris,	tenēris,
<i>Acc.</i>	Tenēros,	tenēras,	tenēra,
<i>Voc.</i>	Tenēri,	tenēræ,	tenēra,
<i>Abl.</i>	Tenēris,	tenēris,	tenēris.

Examples of adjectives declined in the same manner.

Aspēri lapīdis. Miserōrum homīnum.

Prospēri mercatōres. Aspēro lapīde.

*The following adjectives of the first and second declension, ending in *us* and *er*, have *ius* in the genitive, and *i* in the dative, and the other cases like *bonus* and *tener*.

<i>Nom.</i>	Unus,	una,	unum;	<i>Gen.</i>	uniūs;	<i>Dat.</i>	uni,	<i>one.</i>
	Alius,	alia,	alium;		aliūs;		alii,	<i>another.</i>
	Nullus,	nulla,	nullum;		nulliūs;		nulli,	<i>none.</i>
	Solus,	sola,	solum;		soliūs;		soli,	<i>alone.</i>
	Totus,	tota,	totum;		totiūs;		toti,	<i>all.</i>
	Ullus,	ulla,	ullum;		ulliūs;		ulli,	<i>any.</i>
	Alter,	altēra,	altērum;		alteriūs;		altēri,	<i>the other.</i>
	Uter,	utra,	utrum;		utriūs;		utri,	<i>either.</i>

Q. Are all adjectives which end in *er* declined like *tener*?

A. They are not; very many drop the *e*: as *glaber*, *smooth*.

Nom. *glaber*, *glabra*, *glabrum*, *and not*
glaber, *glab̄ra*, *glab̄rum*.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Q. How are adjectives of the *third* declension declined?

A. The masculine is declined like a masculine noun of the third declension; the feminine is declined in the same manner; and the neuter is declined like a neuter noun of the third declension.

Decline Felix, happy.

Singular number.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Felix,	felix,	felix,
<i>Gen.</i>	Felīcis,	felīcis,	felīcis,
<i>Dat.</i>	Felīci,	felīci,	felīci,
<i>Acc.</i>	Felīcem,	felīcem,	felix,
<i>Voc.</i>	Felix,	felix,	felix,
<i>Abl.</i>	Felice, or } Felīci, } }	felice or } felīci, } }	felice or } felīci. } }

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Felīces,	felīces,	felicia,
<i>Gen.</i>	Feliciūm,	feliciūm,	feliciūm,
<i>Dat.</i>	Feliciōbus,	feliciōbus,	feliciōbus,
<i>Acc.</i>	Felīces,	felīces,	felicia,
<i>Voc.</i>	Felīces,	felīces,	felicia,
<i>Abl.</i>	Feliciōbus,	feliciōbus,	feliciōbus.

Decline *Pauper*, *poor*.*Singular number.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Pauper,	pauper,	pauper,
<i>Gen.</i>	Paupēris,	paupēris,	paupēris,
<i>Dat.</i>	Paupēri,	paupēri,	paupēri,
<i>Acc.</i>	Paupērem,	paupērem,	pauper,
<i>Voc.</i>	Pauper,	pauper,	pauper,
<i>Abl.</i>	Paupēre,	paupēre,	paupēre.

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Paupēres,	paupēres,	paupēra,
<i>Gen.</i>	Paupērum,	paupērum,	paupērum,
<i>Dat.</i>	Pauperībus,	pauperībus,	pauperībus,
<i>Acc.</i>	Paupēres,	paupēres,	paupēra,
<i>Voc.</i>	Paupēres,	paupēres,	paupēra,
<i>Abl.</i>	Pauperībus,	pauperībus,	pauperībus.

Decline *Prudens*, *prudent*.*Singular number.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Prudens,	prudens,	prudens,
<i>Gen.</i>	Prudentis,	prudentis,	prudentis,
<i>Dat.</i>	Prudenti,	prudenti,	prudenti,
<i>Acc.</i>	Prudentem,	prudentem,	prudens,
<i>Voc.</i>	Prudens,	prudens,	prudens,
<i>Abl.</i>	Prudente or Prudenti, }	in all the genders.	

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Prudentes,	prudentes,	prudentia,
<i>Gen.</i>	Prudentium,	prudentium,	prudentium,
<i>Dat.</i>	Prudentībus,	prudentībus,	prudentībus,

<i>Acc.</i>	Prudentes,	prudentes,	prudentia,
<i>Voc.</i>	Prudentes,	prudentes,	prudentia,
<i>Abl.</i>	Prudentibus,	prudentibus,	prudentibus.

Decline Mitis, meek.

Singular number.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Mitis,	mitis,	mite,
<i>Gen.</i>	Mitis,	mitis,	mitis,
<i>Dat.</i>	Miti,	miti,	miti,
<i>Acc.</i>	Mitem,	mitem,	mite,
<i>Voc.</i>	Mitis,	mitis,	mite,
<i>Abl.</i>	Miti,	miti,	miti.

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Mites,	mites,	mitia,
<i>Gen.</i>	Mitium,	mitium,	mitium,
<i>Dat.</i>	Mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus,
<i>Acc.</i>	Mites,	mites,	mitia,
<i>Voc.</i>	Mites,	mites;	mitia,
<i>Abl.</i>	Mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus.

In the same manner are declined the following adjectives.

Terribile tonītru.	Comi puēro.
Sublimes arbōres.	Gravium lapidum.
Lævem aquam.	Viridi herbā.
Omnibus hominībus.	Terrestria animalia.

Praecepta

Decline Duo, two.*Plural number.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Duo,	duæ,	duo,
<i>Gen.</i>	Duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum,
<i>Dat.</i>	Duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,
<i>Acc.</i>	Duos or duo,	duas,	duo,
<i>Voc.</i>	Duo,	duæ,	duo,
<i>Abl.</i>	Duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus.

Decline Tres, three.*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Tres,	tres,	tria,
<i>Gen.</i>	Trium,	trium,	trium,
<i>Dat.</i>	Tribus,	tribus,	tribus,
<i>Acc.</i>	Tres,	tres,	tria,
<i>Voc.</i>	Tres,	tre,	tria,
<i>Abl.</i>	Tribus,	tribus,	tribus.

DEGREES.

Q. How are the different degrees of any quality expressed in Latin?

A. By changes made on the terminations of the adjectives.

Q. What are these changes called?

A. They are called *Degrees of Comparison*.

Q. How many *Degrees of Comparison* are there?

A. There are three; the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

POSITIVE DEGREE.

Q. What is the *positive degree*?

A. The positive degree is that which does not express any increase or decrease in the quality: as, *durus*, *hard*; *latus*, *broad*.

COMPARATIVE DEGREE.

Q. What is the comparative degree?

A. The comparative degree is that which expresses some increase or decrease in the quality: as *durior*, *harder*; *latior*, *broader*; *minor*, *less*.

SUPERLATIVE DEGREE.

Q. What is the superlative degree?

A. The superlative degree is that which expresses the greatest increase or decrease in the quality: as, *durissimus*, *hardest*; *latissimus*, *broadest*; *minimus*, *least*.

FORMATION OF THE DEGREES.

Q. How are the degrees formed?

A. The comparative degree is formed from the first case of the positive which ends in *i*, by adding the syllable *or*, for the masculine and feminine genders, and *us*, for the neuter gender: as

<i>Nom.</i>	altus,	alta,	altum,
<i>Gen.</i>	alti.		

Here the genitive is the first case that ends in *i*; then add *or*, for the masculine and feminine, and *us*, for the neuter: as

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	altior,	altior,	altius,

Q. Is the genitive always the first case of the positive that ends in *i*?

A. It is not; sometimes the dative; as, *Nom. Mitis*; *Gen. Mitis*; *Dat. Miti*; now add *or* and *us*, which will make *mitior*, *mitior*, *mitius*.

Decline Mitior, meeker.

Singular number.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Mitior,	mitior,	mitius,
<i>Gen.</i>	Mitiōris,	mitiōris,	mitiōris,
<i>Dat.</i>	Mitiōri,	mitiōri,	mitiōri,
<i>Acc.</i>	Mitiōrem,	mitiōrem,	mitius,
<i>Voc.</i>	Mitior,	mitior,	mitius,
<i>Abl.</i>	Mitiōre or } Mitiōri,	in all the genders.	

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Mitiōres,	mitiōres,	mitiōra,
<i>Gen.</i>	Mitiōrum,	mitiōrum,	mitiōrum,
<i>Dat.</i>	Mitiorib⁹s,	mitiorib⁹s,	mitiorib⁹s,
<i>Acc.</i>	Mitiōres,	mitiōres,	mitiōra,
<i>Voc.</i>	Mitiōres,	mitiōres,	mitiōra,
<i>Abl.</i>	Mitiorib⁹s,	mitiorib⁹s,	mitiorib⁹s.

Q. How are all adjectives of the *comparative degree* declined?

A. Like *mitior*, which has just been declined.

Q. How is the *superlative degree* formed?

A. The *superlative degree* is also formed from the first case of the positive which ends in *i*, by adding to it *ssimus*: as,

<i>Nom.</i>	Altus,	alta,	altum,
<i>Gen.</i>	Alti.		

now add *ssimus*, which makes *altissimus*, highest.

Q. Is there any great exception to this general rule?

A. There is; in all adjectives which end in *er*, the superlative degree is formed from the nominative, by adding *rrimus*; as *pauper*, poor; *pauperrimus*, poorest.

Q. How are all adjectives of the superlative degree declined?

A. Like *Bonus*.

EXAMPLES OF REGULAR COMPARISON.

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
<i>Acūtus,</i> <i>sharp,</i>	<i>acutior,</i> <i>sharper,</i>	<i>acutissimus,</i> <i>sharpest.</i>
<i>Antīquus,</i> <i>ancient,</i>	<i>antiquior,</i> <i>more ancient,</i>	<i>antiquissimus,</i> <i>most ancient.</i>
<i>Durus,</i> <i>hard,</i>	<i>durior,</i> <i>harder,</i>	<i>durissimus,</i> <i>hardest.</i>
<i>Longus,</i> <i>long,</i>	<i>longior,</i> <i>longer,</i>	<i>longissimus,</i> <i>longest.</i>
<i>Asper,</i> <i>rough,</i>	<i>asperior,</i> <i>rougher,</i>	<i>asperrīmus,</i> <i>roughest.</i>
<i>Glaber,</i> <i>smooth,</i>	<i>glabrior,</i> <i>smoother,</i>	<i>glaberrīmus,</i> <i>smoothest.</i>
<i>Pulcher,</i> <i>fair,</i>	<i>pulchrior,</i> <i>fairer,</i>	<i>pulcherrīmus,</i> <i>fairest.</i>

EXAMPLES OF IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

<i>Bonus,</i> <i>good,</i>	<i>meliōr,</i> <i>better,</i>	<i>optīmus,</i> <i>best.</i>
<i>Malus,</i> <i>bad,</i>	<i>pejor,</i> <i>worse,</i>	<i>pessīmus,</i> <i>worst.</i>
<i>Magnus,</i> <i>great,</i>	<i>major,</i> <i>greater,</i>	<i>maxīmus,</i> <i>greatest.</i>
<i>Parvus,</i> <i>small,</i>	<i>minor,</i> <i>less,</i>	<i>minīmus,</i> <i>least.</i>
<i>Multus, (masc.)</i> <i>much,</i>	—	<i>pluriōmus,</i> <i>most.</i>
<i>Multa, (fem.)</i> <i>much,</i>	—	<i>pluriōma,</i> <i>most.</i>
<i>Multum, (neut.)</i>	<i>plus,</i> <i>more,</i>	<i>pluriōnum,</i> <i>most.</i>

Dives, rich,	ditior, richer,	ditissimus, richest.
Supērus, high,	superior, higher,	{ suprēmus or summus, highest.

PRONOUN.

*out 2
Jan 20th*
Q. What is a pronoun?

A. A pronoun is a word which stands for a noun.

Q. Why does it receive this name?

A. Because it is made up of the Latin word *pro*, which means *for*, and *noun*; as if it were called a *for-noun*.

Q. Will you give me an example?

A. Cicero was the greatest orator of Rome: by his vigilance and patriotism he saved his country from ruin.

Q. Which are the pronouns in this sentence?

A. *He*, and *his*, which stand for the noun *Cicero*.

Q. How many simple pronouns in Latin are there?

A. Eighteen: three substantive pronouns, and fifteen adjective pronouns;

Q. What are the substantive pronouns?

A. *Ego*, *tu* and *sui*.

Q. Which are the adjective pronouns?

A. *Ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *quis*, *qui*, *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*, *nostras*, *vestras*, and *cujas*.

SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS.

Decline Ego, I.

Singular number.

Nom.	ego,	I,
Gen.	mei,	of me,
Dat.	mei,	to or for me,

<i>Acc.</i>	me,	me,
<i>Voc.</i>	—	
<i>Abl.</i>	me,	from, by or with me.

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	nos,	we,
<i>Gen.</i>	nostrūm or nostrī,	of us,
<i>Dat.</i>	nobis,	to or for us,
<i>Acc.</i>	nos,	us,
<i>Voc.</i>	—	
<i>Abl.</i>	nobis,	from, by or with us.

*Decline Tu, thou.**Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	tu,	thou or you,
<i>Gen.</i>	tui,	of thee or of you,
<i>Dat.</i>	tibi,	to thee or to you,
<i>Acc.</i>	te,	thee or you,
<i>Voc.</i>	tu,	O thou or O you,
<i>Abl.</i>	te,	from, by or with thee or with you.

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	vos,	ye or you,
<i>Gen.</i>	vestrūm or vestrī,	of you,
<i>Dat.</i>	vobis,	to or for you,
<i>Acc.</i>	vos,	you,
<i>Voc.</i>	vos,	O ye or you,
<i>Abl.</i>	vobis,	from, by or with you.

*Decline Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself.**Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	—	
<i>Gen.</i>	sui,	of himself, of herself, of itself,
<i>Dat.</i>	sibi,	to himself, to herself, to itself,

<i>Acc.</i>	<i>se,</i>	<i>himself, herself, itself,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>se,</i>	<i>with himself, with herself, with itself.</i>
		<i>Plural number.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	—	
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>sui,</i>	<i>of themselves,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>sibi,</i>	<i>to or for themselves,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>se,</i>	<i>themselves,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>se,</i>	<i>from, by or with themselves.</i>

ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.**Decline Ille, he.****Singular number.**

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Ille,</i>	<i>illa,</i>	<i>illud,</i>
	<i>he,</i>	<i>she,</i>	<i>it.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>illius,</i>	<i>illius,</i>	<i>illius,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>illi,</i>	<i>illi,</i>	<i>illi,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>illum,</i>	<i>illam,</i>	<i>illud,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>ille,</i>	<i>illa,</i>	<i>illud,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>illo,</i>	<i>illa,</i>	<i>illo.</i>

Plural number.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>illi,</i>	<i>illæ,</i>	<i>illa,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>illorum,</i>	<i>illarum,</i>	<i>illorum,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>illis,</i>	<i>illis,</i>	<i>illis,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>illos,</i>	<i>illas,</i>	<i>illa,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>illi,</i>	<i>illæ,</i>	<i>illa,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>illis,</i>	<i>illis,</i>	<i>illis.</i>

Decline *Hic, this.**Singular number.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	hic,	hæc,	hoc,
<i>Gen.</i>	hujus,	hujus,	hujus,
<i>Dat.</i>	huic,	huic,	huic,
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc,	hanc,	hoc,
<i>Voc.</i>	hic,	hæc,	hoc,
<i>Abl.</i>	hoc,	hac,	hoc.

Plural number.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	hi,	hæ,	hæc,
<i>Gen.</i>	horum,	haram,	horum,
<i>Dat.</i>	his,	his,	his,
<i>Acc.</i>	hos,	has,	hæc,
<i>Voc.</i>	hi,	hæ,	hæc,
<i>Abl.</i>	his,	his,	his.

Q. What do the different genders of *hic* mean?

A. The masculine, *hic*, means *this man*; the feminine, *hæc*, means *this woman*; the neuter, *hoc*, means *this thing*.

Decline *Is, ea, id, he, she, it.**Singular number.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	is, he,	ea, she,	id, it.
<i>Gen.</i>	ejas, <i>of him or his,</i>	ejas, <i>of her or hers,</i>	ejas, <i>of it or its.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	ei, <i>to him,</i>	ei, <i>to her,</i>	ei, <i>to it.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	eum, him,	eam, her,	id, it.

Voc.

Abl.

eo,
with him,

ea,
with her,

eo,
with it.

Plural number.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	ii,	ee,	ea,
	<i>they, or those</i>	<i>they, or those</i>	<i>those things.</i>
	<i>men,</i>	<i>women,</i>	
Gen.	eōrum,	eārum,	eōrum,
	<i>of those men,</i>	<i>of those wo-</i>	<i>of those things.</i>
	<i>or their,*</i>	<i>men, or their,</i>	
Dat.	eis or iis,	eis or iis,	eis or iis,
	<i>to those men,</i>	<i>to those wo-</i>	<i>to those things.</i>
		<i>men,</i>	
Acc.	eos,	eas,	ea,
	<i>them, or</i>	<i>them, or</i>	<i>those things.</i>
	<i>those men,</i>	<i>those women,</i>	
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	eis or iis,	eis or iis,	eis or iis,
	<i>with those</i>	<i>with those</i>	<i>with those</i>
	<i>men,</i>	<i>women,</i>	<i>things.</i>

Q. Decline the adjective pronoun *quis*; first telling its meaning?

A. *Quis* means *who?* or *what man?* *quæ* means *who?* or *what woman?* *quod* or *quid* means *what?* *which thing?* or *what thing?*

Singular number.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	quis,	quæ,	quod, or quid,
Gen.	cujus,	cujus,	cujus,
Dat.	cui,	cui,	cui,

* As, eōrum libri, *their books, or the books of those men:* eārum libri, *their books, or the books of those women.*

<i>Acc.</i>	quem,	quam,	quod, or } quid,
-------------	-------	-------	---------------------

<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	quo,	quâ,	quo.

Plural number.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	qui,	quæ,	quæ,
<i>Gen.</i>	quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
<i>Dat.</i>	queis, or } quibus,	<i>in all the genders.</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	quos,	quas,	quæ,
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	queis, or } quibus,	<i>in all the genders.</i>	

Q. What is the relative pronoun?

A. Qui, quæ, quod.

Q. What is the meaning of it?

A. Who, which, that; or vir qui, the man who or that; fœmina quæ, the woman who or that; negotium quod, the thing which or that.

Q. How is it declined?

Singular number.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	qui,	quæ,	quod,
<i>Gen.</i>	cujus,	cujus,	cujus,
<i>Dat.</i>	cui,	cui,	cui,
<i>Acc.</i>	quem,	quam,	quod,
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	quo,	quâ,	quo.

Plural number.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	qui,	quæ,	quæ,
<i>Gen.</i>	quorum,	quarum,	quorum,

<i>Dat.</i>	<i>queis, or</i>	<i>in all the genders.</i>
	<i>quibus,</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quos,</i>	<i>quas,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>		
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>queis, or</i>	<i>in all the genders.</i>
	<i>quibus,</i>	

Q. What other pronouns are there?

A. *Meus*, which means my or mine; *tuis*, thy or thine; *suis*, his own, her own, its own; all which are declined like *bonus*, *bona*, *bonum*. There are also two, *noster*, our; and *vester*, your; declined like *pulcher*, *pulchra*, *pulchrum*.

VOCABULARY.

- Alexander, Alexandri;** proper noun, 2d declen. masc. *Alexander, the name of the great Macedonian general.*
- Amicus, amici;** noun, 2d declen. masc. *a friend.*
- Animal, animalis;** noun, 3d declen. neut. *an animal.*
- Aqua, aquæ;** noun, 1st declen. fem. *water.*
- Arbor, arbōris;** noun, 3d declen. fem. *a tree.*
- Asper, aspēra, aspērum;** adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *rough.*
- Aurum, auri;** noun, 2d declen. neut. *gold.*
- Bellus, bella, bellum;** adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *handsome.*
- Carus, cara, carum;** adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *dear, beloved.*
- Comis, comis, come;** adjec. 3d declen. *mild.*
- Divinus, divina, divīnum;** adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *divine.*
- Fidus, fida, fidūm;** adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *faithful.*
- Filia, filiæ;** noun, 1st declen. fem. *a daughter.*
- Fœmina, fœminæ;** noun, 1st declen. fem. *a woman.*
- Formōsus, formōsa, formōsum;** adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *beautiful.*
- Gravis, gravis, grave;** adjec. 3d declen. *heavy.*
- Herba, herbæ;** noun, 1st declen. fem. *grass.*

- Homo, hominis; noun, 3d declen. common gen. *a man, one of the human race; sometimes applied to woman, and therefore of the common gender, because common to both man and woman.*
- Lævis, lævis, læve; adjec. 3d declen. *smooth.*
- Lapis, lapidis; noun, 3d declen. masc. *a stone.*
- Lex, legis; noun, 3d declen. fem. *law.*
- Magnus, magna, magnum; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *great.*
- Mercator, mercatoris; noun, 3d declen. masc. *a merchant.*
- Miser, misera, miserum; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *miserable.*
- Nomen, nominis; noun, 3d declen. neut. *a name.*
- Omnis, omnis, omne; adjec. 3d declen. *all.*
- Pavo, pavonis; noun, 3d declen. masc. and fem. *a peacock.*
- Pretiosus, pretiosa, pretiosum; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *precious.*
- Proprius, propria, proprium; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *proper.*
- Prosper, prospëra, prospërum; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *prosperous.*
- Puer, puëri; noun, 2d declen. masc. *a boy.*
- Servus, servi; noun, 2d declen. masc. *a servant.*
- Spes, spei; noun, 5th declen. fem. *hope.*
- Sublimis, sublimis, sublime; adjec. 3d declen. *lofty, high.*
- Superbus, superba, superbum; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *proud.*
- Terribilis, terribilis, terribile; adjec. 3d declen. *terrible.*
- Terrestris, terrestris, terrestre; adjec. 3d declen. *terrestrial, earthly.*
- Tonitru; noun, 4th declen. *thunder; not declined in the singular number; nom. plural, tonitrua.*
- Ultimus, ultima, ultimum; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *superlative degree; farthest, last: it is not used in the positive: the comparative degree is ulterior, farther.*
- Viridis, viridis, viride; adjec. 3d declen. *green.*

OF THE VERB.

Q. What is a Verb?

A. A verb is that word in a sentence which declares some person or thing either as *being*, as *acting*, or as *being acted upon*.

Q. Will you give me some examples to explain what you mean?

A. When I say *I am*, I speak of my *being*, or my existence; when I say *I strike*, I speak of my *acting*, for I must strike something; when I say *I am struck*, I speak of my *being acted upon*, as some person must strike me.

Q. Why is it called a verb?

A. It is called a *verb*, (from the Latin *verbum*, which means a *word*,) because it is the chief word in every sentence; and without it no perfect sentence can exist.

Q. How many kinds of verbs are there?

A. Three: Active, Passive, and Neuter.

ACTIVE VERB.

Q. What is an active verb?

A. An active verb is that which expresses *action*; as *amo*, I love: and it always has an object; for the question would be asked, whom do you love? and the answer to the question is the object. As, I love *you*, I love *virtue*. In these examples *you* and *virtue* are called the *objects* of the verb.

PASSIVE VERB.

Q. What is a passive verb?

A. A passive verb is that which expresses the receiving of an action; as, *amor*, I am loved; which means that I receive the love of another person.

NEUTER VERB.

Q. What is a neuter verb?

A. A neuter verb is that which expresses neither action exerted upon an object, nor the receiving of an action, but only the *being* or *state of things*; as, *dormio*, I sleep; *sedeo* I sit; *curro*, I run.

Q. Is there not *action* expressed in the verb *curro*, I run?

A. There is: but then the action is confined to the person, and does not pass over to an object; which makes the distinction between an *active* and *neuter* verb.

Q. What is the meaning of the word *neuter*?

A. *Neuter* is the Latin word for *neither*. For example, a *neuter* verb or a *neither* verb is that which is *neither active* nor *passive*: so a *neuter* noun, or a *neither* noun, is one that is *neither* of the masculine nor feminine gender.

Q. Do verbs undergo any change?

A. They do; on account of voice, mode, tense, number, and person.

VOICE.

Q. How many voices are there?

A. There are *two voices*; the *active voice*, and the *passive voice*.

Q. How do you distinguish the two voices from one another?

A. The *active voice* ends in *o*; as *amo*, I love; the *passive voice* ends in *or*; as *amor*, I am loved.

MODE.

Q. How many modes are there?

A. There are *four modes*: the *indicative*; the *subjunctive*; the *imperative*, and the *infinitive*.

Q. What does the *indicative mode* declare?

Sect. 1-55
1-55

Q. The *indicative mode* *indicates* or *declares* a thing positively; as, *ego amo*, I love, or I do love: or it asks a question; as *amas tu?* dost thou love?

Q. What does the *subjunctive mode* signify?

A. The *subjunctive mode* signifies *power* or *duty*; as, *iem*, I may love; *amavissem*, I should have loved.

Q. What is the use of the *imperative mode*?

A. The *imperative mode* *commands* or *entreats*; as, *veni huc*, come hither; *ama tu*, love thou; *parce mihi*, spare me.

Q. How is the *infinitive mode* used?

A. The *infinitive mode* has neither number nor person, but expresses the signification of the verb without limit; as, *amare*, to love; *docere*, to teach; *legere*, to read; *audire*, to hear.

Def.

TENSE.

Q. How many tenses or times are there?

A. Five: the present, the imperfect, the perfect, the pluperfect, and the future.

Q. What does the *present tense* signify?

A. The *present tense* speaketh of a thing *present*, or now doing; as, *amo*, I love, or am loving.

Q. What does the *imperfect tense* express?

A. The *imperfect tense* expresses an action as passing some time ago, but not yet finished; as, *amabam*, I was loving; *ædificabat*, he was building.

Q. What does the *perfect tense* express?

A. The *perfect tense* expresses an action as perfectly completed and finished; as, *amavit*, he loved, or has loved; *docui*, I taught.

Q. What does the *pluperfect tense* express?

A. The *pluperfect tense* expresses an action as finished before some other action took place; as, *ædificav̄ram*, I had

built; that is, I had built before a certain time; *amaverat*, he had loved.

Q. What does the *future* tense express?

A. The *future* tense speaks of a thing that will be done in future, or some time hence; as, *amabo*, I shall love; *cenabo*, I shall sup.

NUMBER.

Q. How many numbers are there?

A. Two: the *singular* number, which speaks of *one*; the *plural* number, which speaks of *two*, or more than two.

PERSON.

Q. How many persons are there?

A. Three: the first, second, and third.

Q. How do you distinguish the persons?

A. The pronouns, *Ego*, I; and *Nos*, we, are of the *first* person: *Tu*, thou; and *Vos*, you, are of the *second* person: *Ille*, he, and *all other words*, excepting the names of persons *spoken to*, are of the *third* person.

CONJUGATION.

Q. What do you mean by the conjugation of a verb?

A. The conjugation of a verb is the regular variation and distribution of its several parts, according to its *voices*, *modes*, *tenses*, *numbers*, and *persons*.

Q. How many conjugations of Latin verbs are there?

A. Four.

Q. How do you distinguish one conjugation from the other?

A. By the termination or ending of the infinitive mode. In the first conjugation the infinitive ends in *are*, long; as, *amare*, to love; *gubernare*, to govern.

In the second conjugation the infinitive ends in *ere*, long; as, *docere*, to teach; *exhibere*, to show.

In the third conjugation the infinitive ends in *ere*, short; as, *legere*, to read; *regere*, to govern.

In the fourth conjugation the infinitive ends in *ire*, long; as, *audire*, to hear; *venire*, to come.

Q. Do all verbs belong to one or the other of these conjugations?

A. They do not: a few verbs are irregular, and cannot be classed with verbs of any conjugation; such as the verb *sum*, I am.

Q. Conjugate the irregular verb *Sum?*

Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative,

Sum. esse. fui.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

Singular.	First person, Ego sum,	<i>I am,</i>
	Second person, Tu es,	<i>Thou art, or you are,</i>
	Third person, Ille est,	<i>He is;</i>
Plural.	First person, Nos sumus,	<i>We are,</i>
	Second person, Vos estis,	<i>Ye or you are,</i>
	Third person, Illi sunt,	<i>They are.</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE. *was.*

Singular.	First person, - Ego eram,	<i>I was,</i>
	Second person, Tu eras,	<i>Thou wast or you were,</i>
	Third person, Ille erat,	<i>He was;</i>
Plural.	First person, Nos erāmus,	<i>We were,</i>
	Second person, Vos erātis,	<i>Ye or you were,</i>
	Third person, Illi erant,	<i>They were.</i>

PERFECT TENSE. *have been or was.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>First person,</i>	Ego fui,	<i>I have been,</i>
	<i>Second person,</i>	Tu fuisti,	<i>Thou hast been,</i>
	<i>Third person.</i>	Ille fuit.	<i>He has been;</i>

<i>Plural.</i>	First person,	Nos fuīmus,	<i>We have been,</i>
	Second person,	Vos fuistis,	<i>Ye or you have been,</i>
	Third person,	Illi fuērunt, or fuēre,	<i>They have been.</i>

Get. .9. 8

PLUPERFECT TENSE. *had been.*

<i>Singular.</i>	First person,	Ego fuēram,	<i>I had been,</i>
	Second person,	Tu fuēras,	<i>Thou hadst been,</i>
	Third person,	Ille fuērat,	<i>He had been;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	First person,	Nos fuerāmus,	<i>We had been,</i>
	Second person,	Vos fuerātis,	<i>Ye or you had been,</i>
	Third person,	Illi fuērant,	<i>They had been.</i>

FUTURE TENSE. *shall or will.*

<i>Singular.</i>	First person,	Ego ero,	<i>I shall be,</i>
	Second person,	Tu eris,	<i>Thou wilt be,</i>
	Third person,	Ille erit,	<i>He will be;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	First person,	Nos erīmus,	<i>We shall be,</i>
	Second person,	Vos erītis,	<i>Ye or you will be,</i>
	Third person,	Illi erunt,	<i>They will be.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may or can.*

<i>Singular.</i>	First person,	Ego sim,	<i>I may be,</i>
	Second person,	Tu sis,	<i>Thou mayest be,</i>
	Third person,	Ille sit,	<i>He may be;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	First person,	Nos simus,	<i>We may be,</i>
	Second person,	Vos sitis,	<i>Ye may be,</i>
	Third person,	Illi sint,	<i>They may be.</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE. *might, could, would or should.*

<i>Singular.</i>	First person,	Ego essem,	<i>I might be,</i>
	Second person,	Tu esses,	<i>Thou mightest be,</i>
	Third person,	Ille esset,	<i>He might be;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	First person,	Nos essēmus,	<i>We might be,</i>
	Second person,	Vos essētis,	<i>Ye might be,</i>
	Third person,	Illi essent,	<i>They might be.</i>

PERFECT TENSE. *may have.*

Singular.	First person,	Ego fuērim,	I may have been,
	Second person,	Tu fuēris,	Thou mayest have been,
	Third person,	Ille fuērit,	He may have been;
Plural.	First person,	Nos fuerīmus,	We may have been,
	Second person,	Vos fuerītis,	Ye may have been,
	Third person,	Illi fuērint,	They may have been.

PLUPERFECT TENSE. *might, could, would or should have.*

Singular.	First person,	Ego fuisse, .	I might have been,
	Second person,	Tu fuisses,	Thou mightest have been,
	Third person,	Ille fuisset, .	He might have been;
Plural.	First person,	Nos fuissēmus,	We might have been,
	Second person,	Vos fuissētis,	Ye might have been,
	Third person,	Illi fuissent,	They might have been.

FUTURE TENSE. *shall have or will have.*

Singular.	First person,	Ego fuēro,	I shall have been, .
	Second person,	Tu fuēris,	Thou will have been,
	Third person,	Ille fuērit,	He will have been;
Plural.	First person,	Nos fuerīmus,	We shall have been,
	Second person,	Vos fuerītis,	Ye will have been,
	Third person,	Illi fuērint,	They will have been.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing.	Second person,	Es Tu or esto Tu,	Be thou or do thou be,
	Third person,	Esto Ille,	Let him be;
Plur.	Second person,	Este Vos or estōte Vos,	Be ye or be you,
	Third person,	Sunto Illi,	Let them be.

INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Present tense,</i>	Esse,	To be.
<i>Perfect tense,</i>	Fuisse,	To have been.
<i>Future tense,</i>	Esse futūrus,	To be about to be.
	Fuisse futūrus,	To have been about to be.

PARTICIPLE.

Future, Futūrus, futūra, futūrum, *About to be.*

2nd Term - 3rd Year

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Q. How is *amo*, I love, of the first conjugation, conjugated?

ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
<i>A.</i> Amo.	amāre.	amāvi.	amātum.

Q. How is *amo* declined through all the Modes, Tenses and Numbers?

A. INDICATIVE MODE.PRESENT TENSE. *love, do love, or am loving.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Am-o, Am-as, Am-at,	I love, Thou lovest, He loves;
<i>Plural.</i>	Am-āmus, Am-ātis, Am-ant,	We love, Ye or you love, They love.

IMPERFECT. *was.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Am-ābam, Am-ābas, Am-ābat,	I was loving, Thou wast loving, He was loving;
<i>Plural.</i>	Am-abāmus, Am-abātis, Am-ābant,	We were loving, Ye or you were loving, They were loving.

PERFECT. *have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Am-āvi, Am-avisti, Am-āvit,	I have loved, Thou hast loved, He has loved;
<i>Plural.</i>	Am-avīmus, Am-avistis, Am-avērunt or am-avēre,	We have loved, Ye or you have loved, They have loved.

PLUPERFECT. *had.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Am-avēram, Am-avēras, Am-avērat,	I had loved, Thou hadst loved, He had loved;
------------------	--	--

<i>Plural.</i>	Am-averāmus,	<i>We had loved,</i>
	Am-averātis,	<i>Ye or you had loved,</i>
	Am-avērant,	<i>They had loved.</i>

FUTURE. *shall or will.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Am-ābo,	<i>I shall love,</i>
	Am-ābis,	<i>Thou wilt love,</i>
	Am-ābit,	<i>He will love;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Am-abīmus,	<i>We shall love.</i>
	Am-abītis,	<i>Ye or you will love,</i>
	Am-ābunt,	<i>They will love.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.**PRESENT TENSE.** *may or can.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Am-em,	<i>I may love,</i>
	Am-es,	<i>Thou mayest love,</i>
	Am-et,	<i>He may love;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Am-ēmus,	<i>We may love,</i>
	Am-ētis,	<i>Ye or you may love,</i>
	Am-ent,	<i>They may love.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would or should.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Am-ārem,	<i>I might love,</i>
	Am-āres,	<i>Thou mightest love,</i>
	Am-āret,	<i>He might love;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Am-ārēmus,	<i>We might love,</i>
	Am-ārētis,	<i>Ye or you might love,</i>
	Am-ārent,	<i>They might love.</i>

PERFECT. *may have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Am-avērim,	<i>I may have loved,</i>
	Am-avēris,	<i>Thou mayest have loved,</i>
	Am-avērit,	<i>He may have loved;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Am-averēmus,	<i>We may have loved,</i>
	Am-averētis,	<i>Ye or you may have loved,</i>
	Am-avērint,	<i>They may have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Am-avissem,	<i>I might have loved,</i>
	Am-avisses,	<i>Thou mightest have loved,</i>
	Am-avisset,	<i>He might have loved;</i>

<i>Plural.</i>	Am-avissēmus, Am-avissētis, Am-avissent,	<i>We might have loved, Ye or you might have loved, They might have loved.</i>
----------------	--	--

FUTURE. *shall have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Am-avēro, Am-avēris, Am-avērit,	<i>I shall have loved, Thou wilt have loved, He will have loved;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Am-averīmus, Am-averītis, Am-avērint,	<i>We shall have loved, Ye or you will have loved, They will have loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Singular.</i>	2. Am-a or amāto, 3. Am-āto,	<i>Love thou, or do thou love, Let him love;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	2. Am-āte or am-atōte, 3. Am-anto,	<i>Love ye, or do ye love, Let them love.</i>

INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Present.</i>	Am-āre,	<i>To love.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	Am-avisse,	<i>To have loved.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Esse amatūrus, -a, um, Fuisse amatūrus, -a, um,	<i>To be about to love. To have been about to love.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>	Am-ans,	<i>Loving.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Am-atūrus, -a, -um,	<i>About to love.</i>

GERUNDS.

<i>Nom.</i>	Am-andum,	<i>Loving,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Am-andi,	<i>Of loving,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Am-ando,	<i>To loving,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Am-andum,	<i>Loving,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Am-ando,	<i>With loving.</i>

SUPINES.

<i>Former.</i>	Am-ātum,	<i>To love.</i>
<i>Latter.</i>	Am-ātu,	<i>To love, or to be loved.</i>

[Let the pupil now commit to memory the third and the eighteenth rules.]

EXAMPLES,

In which are introduced verbs of the first conjugation, and in the active voice only. The vocabulary is at the end of the verbs.

Deus creāvit mundum.	Vocavisti servum?
Colōnus arat arvum.	Vos sperabītis.
Nos clamaverīmus.	Tu laboravēris.
Omnes honorārent bonos.	Equi tolērant magna pondēra.
Ille est promulgatūrus rumōres.	Nos invitarēimus. Explorātu.
Vos ædificāte domum.	Specta cælum.
Donātum. Vulnerando.	Canes latrābunt.
Tu propēra.	Ego declarāvi meam senten-
Nos parabīmus cœnam.	tiam.

PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Amor.	amāri.	amātus.

INDICATIVE MODE.**PRESENT TENSE. *am.***

Singular.	Am-or,	<i>I am loved,</i>
	Am-āris or -āre,	<i>Thou art loved,</i>
	Am-ātur,	<i>He is loved;</i>
Plural.	Am-āmur,	<i>We are loved,</i>
	Am-am̄ni,	<i>Ye or you are loved,</i>
	Am-antur,	<i>They are loved.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

Singular.	Am-ābar,	<i>I was loved,</i>
	Am-abāris or -abāre,	<i>Thou wast loved,</i>
	Am-abāturus,	<i>He was loved;</i>
Plural.	Am-abāmur,	<i>We were loved,</i>
	Am-abam̄ni,	<i>Ye or you were loved,</i>
	Am-abantur,	<i>They were loved.</i>

PERFECT. *have been, was, or am.*

Singular.	Amātus sum or fui,	<i>I have been loved,</i>
	Amātus es or fuisti,	<i>Thou hast been loved,</i>
	Amātus est or fuit,	<i>He has been loved;</i>

<i>Plural.</i>	Amāti sumus or fuīmus, Amāti estis or fuistis, Amāti sunt or fuērunt or fuēre,	We have been loved, Ye or you have been loved, They have been loved.
----------------	--	--

PLUPERFECT. had been.

<i>Singular.</i>	Amātus eram or fuēram, Amātus eras or fuēras, Amātus erat or fuērat,	I had been loved, Thou hadst been loved, He had been loved;
<i>Plural.</i>	Amāti erāmus or fuerāmus, Amāti erātis or fuerātis, Amāti erant or fuērant,	We had been loved, Ye or you had been loved, They had been loved.

FUTURE. shall or will be.

<i>Singular.</i>	Am-ābor, Am-abēris or abēre, Am-abītur,	I shall be loved, Thou wilt be loved, He will be loved;
<i>Plural.</i>	Am-abīmur, Am-abimīni, Am-abuntur,	We shall be loved, Ye or you will be loved, They will be loved.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.**PRESENT TENSE. may or can be.**

<i>Singular.</i>	Am-er, Am-ēris or -ēre, Am-ētur,	I may be loved, Thou mayst be loved, He may be loved;
<i>Plural.</i>	Am-ēmur, Am-emīni, Am-entur,	We may be loved, Ye or you may be loved, They may be loved.

IMPERFECT. might, could, would, or should be.

<i>Singular.</i>	Am-ārer, Am-arēris or -arēre, Am-arētur,	I might be loved, Thou mightest be loved, He might be loved;
<i>Plural.</i>	Am-arēmur, Am-aremīni, Am-arentur,	We might be loved, Ye or you might be loved, They might be loved.

PERFECT. may have been.

<i>Singular.</i>	Amātus sim or fuērim, Amātus sis or fuēris, Amātus sit or fuērit,	I may have been loved, Thou mayest have been loved, He may have been loved:
------------------	---	---

<i>Plural.</i>	Amāti simus or fuerīmus, Amāti sitis or fuerītis, Amāti sint or fuērint,	We may have been loved, Ye or you may have been loved, They may have been loved.
----------------	--	--

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have been.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Amātus essem or fuisse,	I might have been loved, Thou might̄t have been loved,
	Amātus esses or fuisse,	He might have been loved;
	Amātus esset or fuisse,	We might have been loved,
<i>Plural.</i>	Amāti essēmus or fuissēmus, Amāti essētis or fuissētis, Amāti essent or fuissent,	Ye or you might have been loved, They might have been loved.

FUTURE. *shall have been.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Amātus fuēro, Amātus fuēris, Amātus fuērit,	I shall have been loved, Thou will have been loved, He will have been loved;
<i>Plural.</i>	Amāti fuerīmus, Amāti fuerītis, Amāti fuērint,	We shall have been loved, Ye or you will have been loved, They will have been loved.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Singular.</i>	2. Am-āre or am-ātor, 3. Am-ātor,	Be thou loved, Let him be loved;
<i>Plural.</i>	2. Am-am̄ni, 3. Am-antor,	Be ye loved, Let them be loved.

INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Present.</i>	Am-āri,	To be loved.
<i>Perfect.</i>	Esse or fuisse amātus, -a, -um,	To have been loved.
<i>Future.</i>	Amātum iri,	To be about to be loved.

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Perfect.</i>	Am-ātus, -a, -um,	Loved.
<i>Future.</i>	Am-andus, -a, -um,	To be loved.

EXAMPLES.

Tu cruciabāris.	Illi rogāti fuērint.
Nos comparāmur.	explorandus.
Vee-fuēati essēmus.	spoliātum iri.

Milites superantur.
Illi privabuntur.
Vos mitigamini.
Ille nominatur.

Ego paratus fuero.
Ego vulneratus sim.
Tu delecteris.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
Dōcēo.	dōcēre.	dōcui.	doctum.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *teach, do teach, or am teaching.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-eo, Dōc-es, Doc-et,	I teach, Thou teachest, or you teach, He teaches;
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-ēmus, Doc-ētis, Doc-ent,	We teach, Ye or you teach, They teach.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-ēbam, Doc-ēbas, Doc-ēbat,	I was teaching, Thou wast teaching, He was teaching;
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-ebāmus, Doc-ebātis, Dec-ēbant,	We were teaching, Ye or you were teaching, They were teaching.

PERFECT.

have.

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-ui, Doc-uisti, Doc-uit,	I have taught, Thou hast taught, He has taught;
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-uīmus, Doc-uītis, Doc-uērunt or doc-uēre,	We have taught, Ye or you have taught, They have taught.

PLUPERFECT.

had.

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-uēram, Doc-uēras, Doc-uērat,	I had taught, Thou hadst taught, He had taught;
------------------	--	---

<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-uerāmūs, Doc-uerātis, Doc-uērant,	<i>We had taught, Ye or you had taught, They had taught.</i>
----------------	---	--

FUTURE. shall or will.

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-ēbo, Doc-ēbis, Doc-ēbit,	<i>I shall teach, Thou will teach, He will teach;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-ebīmus, Doc-ebītis, Doc-ēbunt,	<i>We shall teach, Ye or you will teach, They will teach.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.**PRESENT TENSE. may or can.**

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-eam, Doc-eas, Doc-eat,	<i>I may teach, Thou mayst teach, He may teach;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-eāmus, Doc-eātis, Doc-eant,	<i>We may teach, Ye or you may teach, They may teach.</i>

- IMPERFECT. might, could, would, or should.

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-ērem, Doc-ēres, Doc-ēret,	<i>I might teach, Thou mightest teach, He might teach;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-erēmus, Doc-erētis, Doc-ērent,	<i>We might teach, Ye or you might teach, They might teach.</i>

PERFECT. may have.

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-uērim, Doc-uēris, Doc-uērit,	<i>I may have taught, Thou mayst have taught, He may have taught;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-uerīmus, Doc-uerītis, Doc-uērint,	<i>We may have taught, Ye or you may have taught, They may have taught.</i>

PLUPERFECT. might, could, would, or should have.

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-uissem, Doc-uissest, Doc-uisset,	<i>I might have taught, Thou mightest have taught, He might have taught;</i>
------------------	--	--

<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-uissēmus, Doc-uissētis, Doc-uissent,	<i>We might have taught, Ye or you might have taught, They might have taught.</i>
----------------	--	---

FUTURE. shall have.

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-uěro, Doc-uěris, Doc-uěrit,	<i>I shall have taught, Thou wilt have taught, He will have taught;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-uerīmus, Doc-uerītis, Doc-uěrint,	<i>We shall have taught, Ye or you will have taught, They will have taught.</i>

IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Singular.</i>	2. Doc-e or doc-ēto, 3. Doc-ēto,	<i>Teach thou, Let him teach;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	2. Doc-ēte or doc-etōte, 3. Doc-ento,	<i>Teach ye or you, Let them teach.</i>

INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Present.</i>	Doc-ēre,	<i>To teach.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	Doc-uisse,	<i>To have taught.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Esse doc-tūrus, -a, -um, Fuiase doc-tūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To be about to teach. To have been about to teach.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>	Doc-ens,	<i>Teaching.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Doc-tūrus, -a, -um,	<i>About to teach.</i>

GERUNDS.

<i>Nom.</i>	Doc-endum,	<i>Teaching,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Doc-endi,	<i>Of teaching,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Doc-endo,	<i>To teaching,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Doc-endum,	<i>Teaching,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Doc-endo,	<i>With teaching.</i>

SUPINES.

<i>Former.</i>	Doc-tum,	<i>To teach.</i>
<i>Latter.</i>	Doc-tu,	<i>To teach, or to be taught.</i>

[There are so many irregularities in this and the following Conjugations, that before the pupil goes farther, he had better commit the rules for the formation of the tenses, at the end of the Fourth Conjugation.]

EXAMPLES.

Præceptores monuērunt ejus discipūlos.	
Nos prohibebimus.	Tu exhibēres.
Servi parērent.	Ille nocitūrus me.
Canes mordēbunt fures.	Manēbis tu?
Sol splendet.	Censuisse.
Jusserāmus.	Ego monēbo illum.
Visum.	Vide solem.
Nos flemus.	Ille teneat ejus locum.
Illi mansērint.	Flores florent.
Leo terrēbit omnia animalia.	

PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Infin.	Perf. Part.
Dōcēor.	dōcēri.	doctus.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

Singular.	Doc-eor, Doc-ēris or doc-ēre, Doc-ētur,	<i>I am taught, Thou art taught, He is taught;</i>
Plural.	Doc-ēmur, Doc-ēmīni, Doc-ēntur,	<i>We are taught, Ye or you are taught, They are taught.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

Singular.	Doc-ēbar, Doc-ēbāris or doc-ebāre, Doc-ebāturus,	<i>I was taught, Thou wast taught, He was taught;</i>
Plural.	Doc-ebāmur, Doc-ebamīni, Doc-ebantur,	<i>We were taught, Ye or you were taught, They were taught.</i>

PERFECT. *have been, was, or am.*

Singular.	Doctus sum or fui, Doctus es or fuisti, Doctus est or fuit,	<i>I have been taught, Thou hast been taught, He has been taught;</i>
------------------	---	---

<i>Plural.</i>	Docti sumus or fuēmus, Docti estis or fuistis, Docti sunt or fuērunt or fuēre,	We have been taught, Ye or you have been taught, They have been taught.
----------------	--	---

PLUPERFECT. had been.

<i>Singular.</i>	Doctus eram or fuēram, Doctus eras or fuēras, Doctus erat or fuērat,	I had been taught, Thou hadst been taught, He had been taught;
<i>Plural.</i>	Docti erāmus or fuerāmus, Docti erātis or fuerātis, Docti erant or fuērant,	We had been taught, Ye or you had been taught, They had been taught.

FUTURE. shall, or will be.

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-ēbor, Doc-ēbēris or -ebēre, Doc-ēbitur,	I shall be taught, Thou will be taught, He will be taught;
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-ebīmur, Doc-ebimīni, Doc-ebuntur,	We shall be taught, Ye or you will be taught, They will be taught.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.**PRESENT TENSE. may, or can be.**

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-eār, Doc-eāris or doc-eāre, Doc-eātūr,	I may be taught, Thou mayest be taught, He may be taught;
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-eāmūr, Doc-eamīni, Doc-eantūr,	We may be taught, Ye or you may be taught, They may be taught.

IMPERFECT. might, could, would or should be.

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-ērer, Doc-erēris or doc-erēre, Doc-erētūr,	I might be taught, Thou mightest be taught, He might be taught;
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-erēmūr, Doc-eremīni, Doc-erentūr,	We might be taught, Ye or you might be taught, They might be taught.

PERFECT. may have been.

<i>Singular.</i>	Doctus sim or fuērim, Doctus sis or fuēris, Doctus sit or fuērit,	I may have been taught, Thou mayest have been taught, He may have been taught;
------------------	---	--

<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Docti simus or fuerimus,</i>	<i>We may have been taught,</i>
	<i>Docti sitis or fueritis,</i>	<i>Ye or you may have been taught,</i>
	<i>Docti sint or fuerint,</i>	<i>They may have been taught.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have been.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Doctus essem or fuisse,</i>	<i>I might have been taught,</i>
	<i>Doctus esses or fuisses,</i>	<i>Thou mightst have been taught,</i>
	<i>Doctus esset or fuisset,</i>	<i>He might have been taught,</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Docti essēmus or fuissēmus,</i>	<i>We might have been taught,</i>
	<i>Docti essētis or fuissētis,</i>	<i>Ye or you might have been taught,</i>
	<i>Docti essent or fuissent,</i>	<i>They might have been taught.</i>

FUTURE. *shall have been.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Doctus fuero,</i>	<i>I shall have been taught,</i>
	<i>Doctus fuēris,</i>	<i>Thou wilt have been taught,</i>
	<i>Doctus fuērit,</i>	<i>He will have been taught;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Docti fuerimus,</i>	<i>We shall have been taught,</i>
	<i>Docti fueritis,</i>	<i>Ye or you will have been taught,</i>
	<i>Docti fuērint,</i>	<i>They will have been taught.</i>

IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>2. Doc-ēre or doc-ētor,</i>	<i>Be thou taught,</i>
	<i>3. Doc-ētor,</i>	<i>Let him be taught;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	<i>2. Doc-emīni,</i>	<i>Be ye taught,</i>
	<i>3. Doc-entor,</i>	<i>Let them be taught.</i>

INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Doc-ēri,</i>	<i>To be taught.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Esse or fuisse doc-tus, -a, -um,</i>	<i>To have been taught.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	<i>Doctum iri,</i>	<i>To be about to be taught.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Doc-tus, -a, -um,</i>	<i>Taught.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	<i>Doc-endus, -a, -um,</i>	<i>To be taught.</i>

EXAMPLES.

<i>Cohibebāmur.</i>	<i>Torti essēmus.</i>
<i>Suasi fuērunt.</i>	<i>Tentus fuēris.</i>
<i>Tortum iri.</i>	<i>Deleamīni.</i>

Delendus.
Adhibitus sit.
Jubeantur.

Monemini.
Prohibebor.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
Lēgo.	lēgēre.	lēgi.	lectum.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *read, do read, or am reading.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-o, Leg-is, Leg-it,	<i>I read,</i> <i>Thou readest,</i> <i>He reads;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-īmus, Leg-ītis, Leg-unt,	<i>We read,</i> <i>Ye or you read,</i> <i>They read.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-ēbam, Leg-ēbas, Leg-ēbat,	<i>I was reading,</i> <i>Thou wast reading,</i> <i>He was reading;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-ēbamus, Leg-ēbātis, Leg-ēbant,	<i>We were reading,</i> <i>Ye or you were reading,</i> <i>They were reading.</i>

PERFECT. *have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Lēg-i, Leg-istī, Lēg-it,	<i>I have read,</i> Thou hast read, <i>He has read;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-īmus, Leg-istis, Leg-ērunt or leg-ēre,	<i>We have read,</i> <i>Ye or you have read,</i> <i>They have read.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-ēram, Leg-ēras, Leg-ērat,	<i>I had read,</i> <i>Thou hadst read,</i> <i>He had read;</i>
------------------	-------------------------------------	--

<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-erāmus, Leg-erātis, Leg-ērant,	<i>We had read, Ye or you had read, They had read.</i>
----------------	--	--

FUTURE. shall or will.

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-am, Leg-es, Leg-et,	<i>I shall read, Thou wilt read, He will read;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-ēmus, Leg-ētis, Leg-ent,	<i>We shall read, Ye or you will read, They will read.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.**PRESENT TENSE. may or can.**

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-am, Leg-as, Leg-at,	<i>I may read, Thou mayst read, He may read;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-āmus, Leg-ātis, Leg-ant,	<i>We may read, Ye or you may read, They may read.</i>

IMPERFECT. might, could, would or should.

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-ērem, Leg-ēres, Leg-ēret,	<i>I might read, Thou mightest read, He might read;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-erēmus, Leg-erētis, Leg-ērent,	<i>We might read, Ye or you might read, They might read.</i>

PERFECT. may have.

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-ērim, Leg-ēris, Leg-ērit,	<i>I may have read, Thou mayst have read, He may have read;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-erīmus, Leg-erītis, Leg-ērint,	<i>We may have read, Ye or you may have read, They may have read.</i>

PLUPERFECT. might, could, would, or should have.

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-issem, Leg-issem, Leg-isset,	<i>I might have read, Thou mightest have read, He might have read;</i>
------------------	--	--

Plural.	Leg-issēmus, Leg-issētis, Leg-issent,	We might have read, Ye or you might have read, They might have read.
----------------	---	--

FUTURE. shall have.

Singular.	Leg-ěro, Leg-ěris, Leg-ěrit,	I shall have read, Thou will have read, He will have read;
Plural.	Leg-erimus, Leg-eritis, Leg-ěrint,	We shall have read, Ye or you will have read, They will have read.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Singular.	2. Lěg-e or leg-ěto, 3. Leg-ěto,	Read thou, Let him read;
Plural.	2. Leg-ěte or leg-ětōte, 3. Leg-unto,	Read ye, or you, Let them read.

INFINITIVE MODE.

Present.	Leg-ěre,	To read,
Perfect.	Lěg-isse,	To have read.
Future.	Esse lectūrus, -a, -um, Fuisse lectūrus, -a, -um,	To be about to read. To have been about to read.

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	Leg-ens,	Reading.
Future.	Lec-tūrus, -a, -um,	About to read.

GERUNDS.

Nom.	Leg-endum,	ing,
Gen.	Leg-endi,	Of reading,
Dat.	Leg-endo,	To reading,
Acc.	Leg-endum,	Reading,
Abl.	Leg-endo,	With reading.

SUPINES.

Former.	Lec-tum,	To read.
Later.	Lec-tu,	To read, or to be read.

Moy

28th

EXAMPLES.

Tempērans babit aquam.	Scripsi multas epistōlas.
Semper dice verum.	Omnes legērent optīmos libros.
Non tange me.	Punctum.
Duxissētis.	Surrexēris.
Liquēro te.	Lusūrus esse.
Misisse librum.	Solve ejus catēnas.
Puēri tegērent eōrum libros.	Accende lucernam.
Calefecisti tuos pedes?	Gessissētis lignum.
Cæsar Romam rexit vincendo Pompeium.	

PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Infin.	Perf. Part.
Lēgor.	lēgi.	lectus.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-or, Leg-ēris or -ëre, Leg-itur,	<i>I am read,</i> <i>Thou art read,</i> <i>He is read;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-imur, Leg-imīni, Leg-untur,	<i>We are read,</i> <i>Ye or you are read,</i> <i>They are read.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-ēbar, Leg-ebāris or -ebāre, Leg-ebātur,	<i>I was read,</i> <i>Thou wast read,</i> <i>He was read;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-ebāmur, Leg-ebamīni, Leg-ebantur,	<i>We were read,</i> <i>Ye or you were read,</i> <i>They were read.</i>

PERFECT. *have been, was, or am.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Lectus sum or fui, Lectus es or fuisti, Lectus est or fuit,	<i>I have been read,</i> <i>Thou hast been read,</i> <i>He has been read;</i>
------------------	---	---

Plural.	Lecti sumus or fuīmus, Lecti estis or fuistis, Lecti sunt or fuērunt or fuēre,	We have been read, Ye or you have been read, They have been read.
----------------	--	---

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

Singular.	Lectus eram or fuēram, Lectus eras or fuēras, Lectus erat or fuērat,	I had been read, Thou hadst been read, He had been read;
Plural.	Lecti erāmus or fuerāmus, Lecti erātis or fuerātis, Lecti erant or fuērant,	We had been read, Ye or you had been read, They had been read.

FUTURE. *shall or will be.*

Singular.	Leg-ar, Leg-āris or -āre, Leg-ātur,	I shall be read, Thou will be read, He will be read;
Plural.	Leg-āmur, Leg-emīni, Leg-entur,	We shall be read, Ye or you will be read, They will be read.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.**PRESENT TENSE.** *may or can be.*

Singular.	Leg-ar, Leg-āris or -āre, Leg-ātur,	I may be read, Thou mayst be read, He may be read;
Plural.	Leg-āmur, Leg-amīni, Leg-antur,	We may be read, Ye or you may be read, They may be read.

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should be.*

Singular.	Leg-ērer, Leg-erēris or -erēre, Leg-erētur,	I might be read, Thou mightst be read, He might be read;
Plural.	Leg-erēmur, Leg-eremīni, Leg-erentur,	We might be read, Ye or you might be read, They might be read.

PERFECT. *may have been.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Lectus sim or fuērim, Lectus sis or fuēris, Lectus sit or fuērit,	I may have been read, Thou mayst have been read, He may have been read;
<i>Plural.</i>	Lecti simus or fuerimus, Lecti sitis or fueritis, Lecti sint or fuērint,	We may have been read, Ye or you may have been read, They may have been read.

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have been.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Lectus essem or suissem, Lectus esses or suisses, Lectus esset or suisset,	I might have been read, Thou mightest have been read, He might have been read;
<i>Plural.</i>	Lecti essēmus or suisēmus, Lecti essētis or suisētis, Lecti essent or suisent,	We might have been read, Ye or you might have been read, They might have been read.

FUTURE. *shall have been.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Lectus fuēro, Lectus fuēris, Lectus fuērit,	I shall have been read, Thou wilt have been read, He will have been read;
<i>Plural.</i>	Lecti fuerimus, Lecti fueritis, Lecti fuērint,	We shall have been read, Ye or you will have been read, They will have been read.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Singular.</i>	2. Leg-ēre or ītor, 3. Leg-ītor,	Be thou read, Let him be read;
<i>Plural.</i>	2. Leg-imini, 3. Leg-untor,	Be ye read, Let them be read.

INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Present.</i>	Leg-i,	To be read,
<i>Perfect.</i>	Esse or fuisse lectus, -a, -um,	To have been read,
<i>Future.</i>	Lectum iri,	To be about to be read.

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Perfect.</i>	Lectus, -a, -um,	Read,
<i>Future.</i>	Legendus, -a, -um,	To be read.

EXAMPLES.

Vincebantur.	Poneremīni.
Divisi erātis.	Quæsītus sit.
Lædāris.	Gerentur.
Regēre.	Mittuntor.
Tangendus.	Petebamīni.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
Aud̄o.	aud̄ire.	aud̄ivi.	aud̄itum.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *hear, do hear, or am hearing.*

Singular.	Aud̄-io, Aud̄-is, Au-dit,	I hear, Thou hearest, He hears;
Plural.	Aud̄-imus, Aud̄-itis, Aud̄-iunt,	We hear, Ye or you hear, They hear.

IMPERFECT. *was.*

Singular.	Aud̄-iēbam, Aud̄-iēbas, Aud̄-iēbat,	I was hearing, Thou wast hearing, He was hearing;
Plural.	Aud̄-iebāmus, Aud̄-iebāt̄is, Aud̄-iēbant,	We were hearing, Ye or you were hearing, They were hearing.

PERFECT. *have.*

Singular.	Aud̄-ivi, Aud̄-ivist̄i, Aud̄-ivit,	I have heard, Thou hast heard, He has heard;
Plural.	Aud̄-iv̄imus, Aud̄-ivist̄is, Aud̄-iv̄erunt or aud̄-iv̄ere,	We have heard, Ye or you have heard, They have heard.

PLUPERFECT. *had.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-iv̄eram, Aud-iv̄eras, Aud-iv̄erat,	I had heard, Thou hadst heard, He had heard;
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-iverāmus, Aud-iverātis, Aud-iv̄erant,	We had heard, Ye or you had heard, They had heard.

FUTURE. *shall* or *will*.

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-iam, Aud-ies, Aud-iēt,	I shall hear, Thou wilt hear, He will hear;
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-iēmus, Aud-iētis, Aud-iēnt,	We shall hear, Ye or you will hear, They will hear.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT. *may* or *can*.

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-iam, Aud-ias, Aud-iāt,	I may hear, Thou mayest hear, He may hear;
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-iāmus, Aud-iātis, Aud-iānt,	We may hear, Ye or you may hear, They may hear.

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would or should.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-īrem, Aud-īrēs, Aud-īret,	I might hear, Thou mightest hear, He might hear;
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-irēmus, Aud-irētis, Aud-irēnt,	We might hear, Ye or you might hear, They might hear.

PERFECT. *may have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-iv̄erim, Aud-iv̄eris, Aud-iv̄erit,	I may have heard, Thou mayest have heard, He may have heard;
------------------	--	--

<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-iverimus, Aud-iveritis, Aud-ivērint,	We may have heard, Ye or you may have heard, They may have heard.
----------------	--	---

'PLUPERFECT. *might, could, woulld or should have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-ivissem, Aud-ivisses, Aud-ivisset,	I might have heard, Thou mightest have heard, He might have heard;
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-ivissēmus, Aud-ivissētis, Aud-ivissent,	We might have heard, Ye or you might have heard, They might have heard.

FUTURE. *shall have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-ivēro, Aud-ivēris, Aud-ivērit,	I shall have heard, Thou wilt have heard, He will have heard;
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-iverimus, Aud-iveritis, Aud-ivērint,	We shall have heard, Ye or you will have heard, They will have heard.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Singular.</i>	2. Aud-i or -ito, 3. Aud-ito,	Hear thou, Let him hear;
<i>Plural.</i>	2. Aud-ite or itōte, 3. Aud-iunto,	Hear ye or you, Let them hear.

INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Present.</i>	Aud-īre,	To hear.
<i>Perfect.</i>	Aud-iyisse,	To have heard.
<i>Future.</i>	Esse auditūrus, -a, -um, Fuisse auditūrus, -a -um,	To be about to hear. To have been about to hear.

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>	Aud-iens,	Hearing,
<i>Future.</i>	Aud-itūrus, -a, -um,	About to hear.

GERUNDS.

<i>Nom.</i>	Aud-iendum,	Hearing,
<i>Gen.</i>	Aud-iendi,	Of hearing,

<i>Dat.</i>	Aud-iendo,	<i>To hearing,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Aud-iendum,	<i>Hearing,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Aud-iendo,	<i>With hearing.</i>

SUPINES.

<i>Former.</i>	Aud-itum,	<i>To hear.</i>
<i>Latter.</i>	Aud-itū,	<i>To hear, or to be heard.</i>

EXAMPLES.

Dormiēbam.	Sciēmus illum.
Erudivissēmus puēros.	Servīto.
Omnēs nutriūnto doctrīnam.	Sepelient corpus.
Obedivēras.	Venēro.
Legēs punient malos.	Sentiātis

PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Audior.	audīri.	audītus.

INDICATIVE MODE.**PRESENT TENSE. am.**

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-iōr, And-īris, or īre,	<i>I am heard,</i> <i>Thou art heard,</i>
	Aud-ītur,	<i>He is heard;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-īmūr, Aud-īmīni, Aud-iuntur,	<i>We are heard,</i> <i>Ye or you are heard,</i> <i>They are heard.</i>

IMPERFECT. was.

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-īēbar, Aud-īebāris or iebāre,	<i>I was heard,</i> <i>Thou wast heard,</i>
	Aud-īebātur,	<i>He was heard;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-īebāmūr, Aud-īebamīni, Aud-īebantur,	<i>We were heard,</i> <i>Ye or you were heard,</i> <i>They were heard.</i>

PERFECT. *have been.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Audītus sum or sui,	I have been heard,
	Audītus es or fuisti,	Thou hast been heard,
	Audītus eat or fuit,	He has been heard;
<i>Plural.</i>	Audīti sumus or fuīmus,	We have been heard,
	Audīti estis or fuistis,	Ye or you have been heard,
	Audīti sunt or fuērunt or fuēre,	They have been heard.

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Audītus eram or fuēram,	I had been heard,
	Audītus eras or fuēras,	Thou hadst been heard,
	Audītus erat or fuērat,	He had been heard;
<i>Plural.</i>	Audīti erāmus or fuēramus,	We had been heard,
	Audīti erātis or fuerātis,	Ye or you had been heard,
	Audīti erant or fuērant,	They had been heard.

FUTURE. *shall or will be.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-iar,	I shall be heard,
	Aud-iēris or -iēre,	Thou wilt be heard,
	Aud-iētur,	He will be heard;
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-iēmur,	We shall be heard,
	Aud-iemīni,	Ye or you will be heard,
	Aud-iēntur,	They will be heard.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may or can be.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-iar,	I may be heard,
	Aud-iāris or iāre,	Thou mayest be heard,
	Aud-iātūr,	He may be heard;
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-iāmur,	We may be heard,
	Aud-iāmīni,	Ye or you may be heard,
	Aud-iāntur,	They may be heard.

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should be.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-īrer,	I might be heard,
	Aud-īrēris or -īrēre,	Thou mightest be heard,
	Aud-īrētūr,	He might be heard;

<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-irēmur, Aud-iremīni, Aud-irentur,	<i>We might be heard, Ye or you might be heard, They might be heard.</i>
----------------	---	--

PERFECT. may have been.

<i>Singular.</i>	Audītus sim or fuērim, Audītus sis or fuēris, Audītus sit or fuērit,	<i>I may have been heard, Thou mayst have been heard, He may have been heard;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Audīti simus or fuerīmus, Audīti sitis or fuerītis, Audīti sint or fuērint,	<i>We may have been heard, Ye or you may have been heard, They may have been heard.</i>

PLUPERFECT. might, could, would, or should have been.

<i>Singular.</i>	Audītus essem or fuisse, Audītus esses or fuisse, Audītus esset or fuisse, Audītus essēmus or fuisse, Audītus essētis or fuisse, Audītus essent or fuisse,	<i>I might have been heard, Thou mightst have been heard, He might have been heard; We might have been heard, Ye or you might have been heard, They might have been heard.</i>
<i>Plural.</i>		

FUTURE. shall have been.

<i>Singular.</i>	Audītus fuēro, Audītus fuēris, Audītus fuērit,	<i>I shall have been heard, Thou wilt have been heard, He will have been heard;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Audīti fuerīmus, Audīti fuerītis, Audīti fuēgint,	<i>We shall have been heard, Ye or you will have been heard, They will have been heard.</i>

IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Singular.</i>	2. Aud-īre or -ītor, 3. Aud-ītor,	<i>Be thou heard, Let him be heard;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	2. Aud-imīni, 3. Aud-iuntor,	<i>Be ye heard, Let them be heard.</i>

INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Present.</i>	Aud-īri,	<i>To be heard.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	Esse or fuisse audītus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been heard.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Audītum iri,	<i>To be about to be heard.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect. **Aud-itus,**
Future. **Aud-iendus,**

Heard.
To be heard.

EXAMPLES.

Obediamini.
Nutriebaris,
Eruditus fuero.
Vestiendus.
Redimiti sitis.

Vestirēmur.
Irretiuntur.
Vincientur.
Nutrītus.

VOCABULARY.*

- Accendo, accendēre, accendi, accensum; act. to light up.**
Adhibeo, adhibēre, adhibui, adhibitum; act. to admit.
Ædifico, ædificāre, ædificāvi, ædificātum; act. to build, to create.
Animal, animālis; noun, neut. an animal.
Aqua, aquæ; noun, fem. water.
Aro, arāre, arāvi, arātum; act. to plough.
Arvum, arvi; noun, neut. the ground.
Bibo, bibēre, bibi, bibitum; act. to drink.
Bonus, bona, bonum; adj. 1st & 2d declen. good.
Cælum, cæli; noun, neut. the sky.
Cæna, cænæ; noun, fem. supper.
Cæsar, Cæsāris; noun, masc. *Cæsar*, the name of a great Roman general.
Calefacio, calefacēre, calefēci, calefactum; act. to warm.
Catēna, catēnæ; noun, fem. a chain.
Canis, canis; noun, com. a dog.
Censeo, censēre, censui, censum; neut. to judge.

* The conjugations of the verbs and the declensions of the nouns are not put down here, as the scholar will know the former by the infinitive, and the latter by the genitive case.

- Clamo, clamāre, clamāvi, clamātūm; act. to cry.
- Cohibeo, cohibēre, cohibui, cohibitūm; act. to restrain.
- Colōnus, colōni; noun, masc. a husbandman.
- Compāro, comparāre, comparāvi, comparatūm; act. to compare.
- Corpus, corpōris; noun, neut. the body.
- Creo, creāre, creāvi, creātūm; act. to create.
- Crucio, cruciāre, cruciāvi, cruciātūm; act. to torment.
- Declāro, declarāre, declarāvi, declaratūm; act. to declare.
- Delecto, delectāre, delectāvi, delectatūm; act. to delight.
- Deleo, delēre, delēvi, delētūm; act. to destroy.
- Deus, Dei; noun, masc. God.
- Dico, dicēre, dixi, dictum; act. to say, to speak.
- Discipūlus, discipuli; noun, masc. a scholar.
- Divīdo, dividēre, divīsi, divīsum; act. to divide.
- Doctrīna, doctrīnæ; noun, fem. learning.
- Domus, domūs and domi; noun, fem. a house. See page 27.
- Dono, donāre, donāvi, donatūm; act. to present, to give.
- Dormio, dormīre, dormīvi, dormītūm; neut. to sleep.
- Duco, ducēre, duxi, ductum; act. to lead,
- Epistōla, epistōlæ; noun, fem. a letter.
- Equus, equi; noun, masc. a horse.
- Erudio, erudīre, erudīvi, eruditūm; act. to instruct.
- Exhibeo, exhibēre, exhibui, exhibitūm; act. to show, to exhibit.
- Explōro, explorāre, explorāvi, exploratūm; act. to search.
- Fleo, flēre, flevi, fletum; neut. to weep.
- Floreo, florēre, florui; (no supine,) neut. to flourish.
- Flos, flōris; noun, masc. a flower.
- Fugo, fugāre, fugāvi, fugatūm; act. to rout, or put to flight.
- Fur, furis; noun, com. a thief, a robber.
- Gero, gerēre, gessi, gestum; act. to carry.
- Honoro, honorāre, honorāvi, honoratūm; act. to honor.
- Invito, invitāre, invitāvi, invitatūm; act. to invite.
- Irretio, irretīre, irretīvi, irretitūm; act. to ensnare.
- Jubeo, jubēre, jussi, jussum; act. to order.
- Labōro, laborāre, laborāvi, laboratūm; act. and neut. to labour.
- Lædo, lædēre, læsi, læsum; act. to hurt.
- Latro, latrāre, latrāvi, latratūm; neut. to bark.
- Lego, legēre, legi, lectum; act. to read.
- Leo, leōnis; noun, masc. a lion.

Lex, legis; noun, fem. *a law.* *or Law.*

Liber, libri; noun, masc. *a book.*

Lignum, ligni; noun, neut. *wood.*

Linquo, linquēre, liqui; (no supine,) act. *to leave.*

Locus, loci; noun, masc. *a place.* In the plural it is both masc. and neut. making *loci* and *loca* in the nom.

Lucerna, lucernæ; noun, fem. *a lamp, a candle.*

Ludo, ludēre, lusi, lusum; neut. *to play.*

Magnus, magna, magnum; adj. 1st & 2d declen. *great.*

Maneo, manēre, mansi, mansum; neut. *to remain.*

Meus, mea, meum; adj. pro. *my.*

Miles, militis; noun, com. *a soldier.*

Mitigo, mitigāre, mitigāvi, mitigātum; act. *to pacify.*

Mitto, mittēre, misi, missum; act. *to send.*

Moneo, monēre, monui, monūtum; act. *to admonish.*

Mordeo, mordēre, momordi, morsum; act. *to bite.*

Multus, multa, multum; adj. 1st & 2d declen. *much, many.*

Mundus, mundi; noun, masc. *the world.*

Noceo, nocēre, nocui, nocūtum; act. *to hurt.*

Nomino, nomināre, nomināvi, nominātum; act. *to name.*

Non; adverb, *not.*

Nutrio, nutrīre, nutrīvi, nutritūm; act. *to nourish, to cherish, to foster.*

Obedio, obedīre, obedīvi, obedītum; neut. *to obey.*

Omnis, omnis, omne; adj. 3d declen. *all, every.*

Optimus, optima, optimum; adj. 1st & 2d declen. *the best.* It is the superlative degree of *bonus*, which see on page 40.

Pareo, parēre, parui, parūtum; neut. *to obey.*

Paro, parāre, parāvi, parātum; act. *to prepare.*

Pes, pedis; noun, masc. *the foot.*

Peto, petēre, petīvi, petītum; act. *to seek.*

Pompeius, Pompeii; noun, masc. *Pompey*, who was a Roman general.

Pondus, pondēris; noun, neut. *a load, a weight.*

Pono, ponēre, posui, posūtum; act. *to place, to put.*

Porto, portāre, portāvi, portātum; act. *to carry.*

Præceptor, præceptōris; noun, masc. *a preceptor.*

Privo, privāre, privāvi, privātum; act. *to deprive.*

Prohibeo, prohibēre, prohibui, prohibītum; act. *to hinder, to prohibit.*

Promulgo, promulgāre, promulgāvi, promulgātum; act. *to publish.*

Propero, properāre, properāvi, properātum; act. & neut. *to hasten.*

- Puer, pūeri; noun, masc. *a boy.*
- Pungo, punḡere, pupūgi, punctum; act. *to prick.*
- Punio, pun̄ire, punīvi, panītum; act. *to punish.*
- Quæro, quær̄ere, quæsīvi, quæsītum; act. *to seek.*
- Redimio, redim̄ire, redimīvi, redimītum; act. *to bind.*
- Rego, reḡere, rexī, rectum; act. *to rule, to govern.*
- Rogo, roḡare, rogāvi, rogātum; act. *to ask.*
- Rumor, rumōris; noun, masc. *a rumor;* in the plural, *news.*
- Scio, sc̄ire, scīvi, scītum; act. *to know.*
- Scribo, scrib̄ere, scripsi, scriptum; act. *to write.*
- Semper; adverb, *always.*
- Sententia, sententiæ; noun, fem. *an opinion.*
- Sentio, sent̄ire, sensi, sensum; act. *to feel.*
- Sepelio, sepel̄ire, sepelīvi, sepultum; act. *to bury.*
- Servio, serv̄ire, servīvi, servītum; act. *to serve, to obey.*
- Servus, servi; noun, masc. *a servant.*
- Sol, solis; noun, masc. *the sun.*
- Solvo, solv̄ere, solvi, solūtum; act. *to loose.*
- Specto, spect̄are, spectāvi, spectātum; act. *to behold.*
- Spero, sper̄are, sperāvi, sperātum; act. *to hope.*
- Splendeo, splend̄ere, splendui, (no supine;) neut. *to shine.*
- Spolio, spoliāre, spoliāvi, spoliātum; act. *to rob.*
- Suadeo, suad̄ere, suāsi, suāsum; act. *to advise.*
- Supēro, super̄are, superāvi, superātum, act. *to conquer.*
- Surgo, surḡere, surrexi, surrectum; neut. generally, but sometimes
act. *to rise.*
- Tango, tanḡere, tet̄igi, tactum; act. *to touch.*
- Tego, teḡere, texi, tectum, act. *to cover.*
- Temperans, temperans, temperans; adj. 3d declen. *temperate.*
When it is not joined to any noun, it means *a temperate man, or woman.*
- Teneo, ten̄ere, tenui, tentum; act. *to hold, to keep.*
- Terreo, terr̄ere, terrui, terrītum; act. *to frighten.*
- Tolero, toler̄are, tolerāvi, tolerātum; act. *to bear.*
- Torqueo, torqūere, torsī, tortum; act. *to twist, to twirl.*
- Tuus, tua, tuum; adj. pronoun, *thy, your.*
- Venio, ven̄ire, vēni, ventum; neut. *to come.*
- Verum, veri, noun, neut. *the truth.*
- Vestio, vest̄ire, vestīvi, vestītum; act. *to clothe.*
- Video, vid̄ere, vīdi, visum; act. *to see.*

Vincio, vincēre, vinxi, vinctum; act. to bind.

Vinco, vincēre, vici, victum; act. to overcome, to conquer.

Voco, vocāre, vocāvi, vocātum; act. to call.

Vulnēro, vulnerāre, vulnerāvi, vulnerātum; act. to wound.

FORMATION OF VERBS.

Q. How many principal parts of a verb are there from which all the others are formed?

A. Four.

Q. What are they?

A. They are *O*, the ending of the *present* tense; *I*, the ending of the *perfect* tense; *RE*, the ending of the *infinitive* mode; and *UM*, the ending of the *supine*.

Q. When is a verb said to be *conjugated*?

A. When all these four parts are mentioned, because from these all the rest are derived.

Q. What is called the *Theme*, or *Root* of the verb?

A. The first person singular, of the indicative mode, present tense; because from this the other three parts are formed.

FORMATION OF THE TENSES IN THE ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Q. How is the *Imperfect* tense formed?

A. The *Imperfect indicative* is formed from the *present*, by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *ābam*; as, *am-o*, *am-ābam*:—in the second conjugation, by changing *o* into *bam*; as, *doce-o*, *docē-bam*:—in the third and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *ēbam*; as *leg-o*, *leg-ēbam*; *audi-o*, *audi-ēbam*.

Q. How is the *Pluperfect* tense of the Indicative formed?

A. The *Pluperfect indicative* is formed from the *perfect* in all the conjugations by changing *i* into *ēram*; as, *amāv-i*, *amav-ēram*; *docu-i*, *docu-ēram*; *leg-i*, *leg-ēram*; *audīv-i*, *audiv-ēram*.

Q. How is the *Future* tense formed?

A. The *Future indicative* is formed from the *present*, by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *ābo*; as, *am-o*, *am-ābo*; in the second conjugation by changing *o* into *bo*; as, *doce-o*, *docē-bo*; in the third and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *am*; as, *leg-o*, *leg-am*; *audi-o*, *audi-am*.

Subjunctive Mode.



Q. How is the *Present* tense, Subjunctive, formed?

A. The *Present subjunctive* is formed from the *present indicative*, by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *em*; as, *am-o*, *am-em*; in the second, third, and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *am*; as, *doce-o*, *doce-am*; *leg-o*, *leg-am*; *audi-o*, *audi-am*.

Q. How is the *Imperfect* tense formed?

A. The *Imperfect subjunctive* is formed, in all the conjugations, from the *present infinitive*, by adding *m*; as, *amāre*, *amārem*; *docēre*, *docērem*; *legēre*, *legērem*; *audīre*, *audīrem*.

Q. How is the *Perfect* formed?

A. The *Perfect subjunctive* is formed from the *perfect indicative*, by changing *i* into *ērim*; as, *amāv-i*, *amav-ērim*; *docu-i*, *docu-ērim*; *leg-i*, *leg-ērim*; *audīv-i*, *audiv-ērim*.

Q. How is the *Pluperfect* formed?

A. The *Pluperfect subjunctive* is formed from the *perfect indicative*, by changing *i* into *issem*; as, *amāv-i*, *amav-issem*; *docu-i*, *docu-issem*; *leg-i*, *leg-issem*; *audīv-i*, *audiv-issem*.

Q. How is the *Future* tense formed?

A. The *Future subjunctive* is formed from the perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *ēro*; as, *amāv-i*, *amav-ēro*; *docu-i*, *docu-ēro*; *leg-i*, *leg-ēro*, *audīv-i*, *audiv-ēro*.

Imperative Mode.

Q. How is the *Imperative* mode formed?

A. The *Present imperative* is formed from the present infinitive, by taking away *re*; as, *amāre*, *ama*; *docēre*, *doce*; *legēre*, *lege*; *audīre*, *audi*. 2 / . . . 2 . . .

Infinitive Mode.

Q. How is the *Present infinitive* formed?

A. The *Present infinitive* is formed from the present indicative, by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *āre*; as, *am-o*, *am-āre*; in the second and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *re*; as, *doce-o*, *docē-re*; *audi-o*, *audi-re*; in the third conjugation, by changing *o* or *io* into *ēre*; as, *leg-o*, *leg-ēre*; *cap-io*, *cap-ēre*.

Q. How is the *Perfect* formed?

A. The *Perfect infinitive* is formed from the perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *isse*; as, *amāv-i*, *amav-isse*; *docu-i*, *docu-isse*; *leg-i*, *leg-isse*; *audīv-i*, *audiv-isse*.

Q. How is the *Future* formed?

A. The *Future infinitive* is formed from the supine, by changing *m* into *rus*, and adding *esse*, or *fuisse*; as, *amātu-m*, *amātu-rus*, *esse* or *fuisse*; *doctu-m*, *doctū-rus*, *esse* or *fuisse*; *lectu-m*, *lectū-rus*, *esse* or *fuisse*; *auditū-m*, *auditū-rus*, *esse* or *fuisse*.

Participles.

Q. How is the *Present Participle* formed?

A. The *Present Participle* is formed from the present indicative, by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *ans*;

as, *am-o*, *am-ans*; in the second conjugation, by changing *o* into *ns*; as, *doce-o*, *doce-ns*; in the third and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *ens*; as, *leg-o*, *leg-ens*; *audi-o*, *audi-ens*.

Q. How is the *Future Participle* formed?

A. The *Future Participle* is formed from the supine, by changing *m* into *rus*; as, *amātu-m*, *amātū-rus*; *doctu-m*, *doctū-rus*; *lectu-m*, *lectū-rus*; *auditu-m*, *auditū-rus*.

Gerunds.

Q. How are the *Gerunds* formed?

A. The *Gerunds* are formed from the present participle, by changing *s* into *dum*, *di*, and *do*; as,

<i>aman-s</i> ;	<i>aman-dum</i> ,	<i>aman-di</i> ,	<i>aman-do</i> ;
<i>docen-s</i> ;	<i>docen-dum</i> ,	<i>docen-di</i> ,	<i>docen-do</i> ;
<i>legen-s</i> ;	<i>legen-dum</i> ,	<i>legen-di</i> ,	<i>legen-do</i> ;
<i>audien-s</i> ;	<i>audien-dum</i> ,	<i>audien-di</i> ,	<i>audien-do</i> .

FORMATION OF THE TENSES IN THE PASSIVE VOICE.

Indicative and Subjunctive Modes.

Q. What five tenses in these modes are formed from the same tenses in the active voice?

A. The *Present*, *Imperfect*, and *Future Indicative*; and the *Present*, and *Imperfect Subjunctive*, are formed from the corresponding tenses in the active voice.

Q. How are they formed?

A. From those tenses in the active voice which end in *o*, the same tenses in the passive are formed by adding *r*; but from those which, in the active voice, end in *m*, the same tenses of the passive are formed by changing *m* into *r*.

Q. Can you give me some examples?

First Conjugation. Second Conjugation. Third Conjugation.

<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>	<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>	<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
<i>Pres. Indic.</i> amo, amor.		doceo, doceor.	lego, legor.		
<i>Imp. Indic.</i> amābam, amābar.		docēbam, docēbar.	legēbam, legēbar.		
<i>Fut. Indic.</i> amābo, amābor.		docēbo, docēbor.	legam, legar.		
<i>Pres. Subj.</i> amem, amer.		doceam, docear.	legam, legar.		
<i>Imp. Subj.</i> amārem, amārer.		docērem, docērer.	legērem, legērer.		

Q. How are the other five tenses formed?

A. The other five tenses, namely, the *Perfect* and *Pluperfect Indicative*; and the *Perfect*, *Pluperfect*, and *Future Subjunctive*, are composed of the perfect participle, declined with the tenses of the verb *Sum*.*

Imperative Mode.

Q. How is the *Imperative* mode formed?

A. The *Imperative Passive* is the same as the *Infinitive Active*.

Infinitive Mode.

Q. How is the *Present Infinitive* formed?

A. The *Present* tense of the *Infinitive* mode is formed from the *Infinitive Active*, by changing *e*, in the first, second, and fourth conjugations, into *i*; as, *amār-e*, *amār-i*; *docēr-e*, *docēr-i*; *audīr-e*, *audīr-i*; and in the third conjugation, by changing *ēre* into *i*; as, *leg-ēre*, *leg-i*.

Q. How is the *Future Infinitive* formed?

A. The *Future Infinitive* is composed of the former supine, and *iri*, (which is the infinitive passive of the verb *eo*, to go,) as, *amātum iri*; *doctum iri*; *lectum iri*.

* Let reference be made to the verbs.

Participles.

Q. How is the *Perfect Participle* formed?

A. The *Perfect Participle* is formed from the former supine, by changing *m* into *s*; as, *amātu-m*, *amātu-s*; *doctu-m*, *doctu-s*; *lectu-m*, *lectu-s*; *audītu-m*, *audītu-s*.

Q. How is the *Future Participle* formed?

A. The *Future Participle* is formed from the present active participle, by changing *s* into *dus*; as, *amans*, *aman-dus*; *docens*, *docendus*; *legens*, *legendus*; *audiens*, *audien-dus*.

A PARADIGM*

Of the Tenses of the Active Voice of the Four Conjugations according to the preceding Formation.

<i>1st Conj.</i>	<i>2d Conj.</i>	<i>3d Conj.</i>	<i>4th Conj.</i>	<i>Names of the Tenses.</i>
<i>From AMO, are formed</i>	<i>From MONEO, are formed</i>	<i>From REGO, are formed</i>	<i>From AUDIO, are formed</i>	<i>Present Indicative. Imperfect Indicative.</i>
<i>Amābam,</i>	<i>monēbam,</i>	<i>regēbam,</i>	<i>audiebam</i>	
<i>Amābo,</i>	<i>monēbo,</i>	<i>regam,</i>	<i>audiām,</i>	<i>Future Indicative.</i>
<i>Amem,</i>	<i>moneam,</i>	<i>regam,</i>	<i>audiām,</i>	<i>Present Subjunctive.</i>
<i>Amans,</i>	<i>monens,</i>	<i>regens,</i>	<i>audiens,</i>	<i>Present Participle.</i>
<i>Amandum,</i>	<i>monendum,</i>	<i>regendum,</i>	<i>audiendum,</i>	
<i>Amandi,</i>	<i>monendi,</i>	<i>regendi,</i>	<i>audiendi,</i>	<i>Gerunds.</i>
<i>Amando, &c.</i>	<i>monendo, &c.</i>	<i>regendo, &c.</i>	<i>audiendo, &c.</i>	

* *Paradigm* means an example, exhibition, or model.

A PARADIGM—(Continued.)

<i>From</i>	<i>From</i>	<i>From</i>	<i>From</i>	<i>Present Infinitive.</i>
AMARE,	MONERE,	REGERE,	AUDIRE,	
<i>are formed</i>	<i>are formed</i>	<i>are formed</i>	<i>are formed</i>	
Amas,	mone,	rege,	audi,	
Amārem,	mōnērem,	regērem,	audīrem,	<i>Imperative.</i>
AMĀVI,	MONUI,	REXI,	AUDIVI	<i>Imperfect Subjunctive.</i>
Amavēram,	monuēram,	rexēram,	audivēram,	<i>Perfect Indicative.</i>
Amavērim,	monuērim,	rexērim,	audivērim,	<i>Pluperfect Indicative.</i>
Amavissem,	monuissem,	rexissem,	audivissem,	<i>Perfect Subjunctive.</i>
Amavēro,	monuēro,	rexēro,	audivēro,	<i>Pluperfect Subjunctive.</i>
Amavisse,	monuisse,	rexisse,	audivisse,	<i>Future Subjunctive.</i>
AMATUM,	MONITUM,	RECTUM,	AUDITUM,	<i>Perfect Infinitive.</i>
Amātu,	monītu,	rectu,	auditū,	<i>Former Supine.</i>
Amatūrus,	monitūrus,	rectūrus,	auditūrus,	<i>Latter Supine.</i>
				<i>Future Participle.</i>

DEONENT VERBS.

Q. What is a *Deponent* verb?

A. A *Deponent* verb is a verb which has a passive form, but an active signification:

Q. Why is a verb called *Deponent*?

A. It is so called because it has *laid aside*, or *put off* its active voice and passive sense: from two Latin words, *pono*, which means *to put* or *place*, and *de*, *off*, or *from*, as if we should call it in English a *put off* verb?

Q. How many participles has a deponent verb?

A. Four: two of which, namely, the *present* and one of the *futures*, are of the active form.

Q. Will you conjugate the *Deponent* verb *Lætor*, I rejoice, which is of the first conjugation, like *amor*?

Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect.

A. Lætor, Lætari, Lætatus sum.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.	Lætor,	I rejoice,
	Lætāris, or Lætāre,	Thou rejoicest,
	Lætātur,	He rejoices;
Plural.	Lætāmur,	We rejoice,
	Lætamīni,	Ye or you rejoice,
	Lætantur,	They rejoice.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

Singular.	Lætābar,	I rejoiced,
	Lætabāris, or Lætabāre,	Thou rejoicedst,
	Lætabātur,	He rejoiced;
Plural.	Lætabāmur,	We rejoiced,
	Lætabamīni,	Ye or you rejoiced,
	Lætabantur,	They rejoiced.

PERFECT TENSE.

Singular.	Lætātus sum,	I have rejoiced,
	Lætatus es,	Thou hast rejoiced,
	Lætātus est,	He has rejoiced;
Plural.	Lætāti sumus,	We have rejoiced,
	Lætāti estis,	Ye or you have rejoiced,
	Lætāti sunt,	They have rejoiced.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Singular.	Lætātus eram,	I had rejoiced,
	Lætātus eras,	Thou hadst rejoiced,
	Lætātus erat,	He had rejoiced;
Plural.	Lætāti erāmus,	We had rejoiced,
	Lætāti erātis,	Ye or you had rejoiced,
	Lætāti erant,	They had rejoiced.

FUTURE TENSE.

Singular.	Lætabor,	I shall rejoice,
	Lætabēris, or lætabēre,	Thou wilt rejoice,
	Lætabītur,	He will rejoice;
Plural.	Lætabīmur,	We shall rejoice,
	Lætabimīni,	Ye or you will rejoice,
	Lætabuntur,	They will rejoice.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.	Læter,	I may rejoice,
	Lætēris or lætēre,	Thou mayest rejoice,
	Lætētur,	He may rejoice;
Plural.	Lætēmur,	We may rejoice,
	Lætemīni,	Ye or you may rejoice,
	Lætentur,	They may rejoice.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

Singular.	Lætarer,	I might rejoice,
	Lætarēris or lætarēre,	Thou mightest rejoice,
	Lætarētur,	He might rejoice;

<i>Plural.</i>	Lætarēmur, Lætaremīni, Lætarentur,	<i>We might rejoice, Ye or you might rejoice, They might rejoice.</i>
----------------	--	---

PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>	Lætātus sim, Lætātus sis, Lætātus sit,	<i>I may have rejoiced, Thou mayest have rejoiced, He may have rejoiced;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Lætāti siūs, Lætāti sitis, Lætāti sint,	<i>We may have rejoiced, Ye or you may have rejoiced, They may have rejoiced.</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>	Lætātus essem, Lætātus esses, Lætātus esset,	<i>I might have rejoiced, Thou mightest have rejoiced, He might have rejoiced;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Lætāti essēmus, Lætāti essētis, Lætāti essent,	<i>We might have rejoiced, Ye or you might have rejoiced, They might have rejoiced.</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>	Lætātus fuēro, Lætātus fuēris, Lætātus fuērit,	<i>I shall have rejoiced, Thou will have rejoiced, He will have rejoiced;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Lætāti fuerīmus, Lætāti fuerītis, Lætāti fuērint,	<i>We shall have rejoiced, Ye or you will have rejoiced, They will have rejoiced.</i>

IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Singular.</i>	2. Lætāre or lætātor, 3. Lætātor,	<i>Rejoice thou, or do thou rejoice, Let him rejoice;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	2. Lætamīni, 3. Lætantor,	<i>Rejoice ye, or do ye rejoice, Let them rejoice.</i>

INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Present.</i>	Lætāri,	<i>To rejoice.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	Lætātus esse or fuisse,	<i>To have rejoiced.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Lætatūrus esse, Lætatūrus fuisse,	<i>To be about to rejoice. To have been about to rejoice.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>	Lætans,	<i>Rejoicing.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	Lætātus,	<i>Having rejoiced.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Lætatūrus,	<i>About to rejoice.</i>
	Lætandus,	<i>To be rejoiced at.</i>

Q. Are all *Deponent* verbs of the first conjugation declined in this manner?

A. Yes.

Q. How are those of the other three conjugations declined?

A. In the same general manner, making those alterations which are peculiar to each conjugation.

EXAMPLES.

Arbitrabāmur.	Ortūri.	Tutātus sim.
Meritus sis.	Expertus est.	Amplexendus.
Questus fuēro.	Mirandus.	Blanditūrus esse.
Domināre.	Lamentāri.	Mori.
Recordantur.	Contemplaremīni.	Experiuntor.
Tutamīni.	Vagabātur.	Usus.
Operatūrus fuisse.	Gloriati fuerītis.	Usus esse.
Partiens.	Prædantur.	Interpretātus esses.
Pacti essētis.		

VOCABULARY OF DEPONENT VERBS.

- Amplexor, amplexi, amplexus sum; 3d conj. *to embrace.*
 Arbitror, arbitrāri, arbitratus sum; 1st conj. *to think.*
 Blandior, blandīri, blanditus sum; 4th conj. *to flatter.*
 Contemplor, contemplāri, contemplatus sum; 1st conj. *to behold.*
 Dominor, domināri, dominatus sum; 1st conj. *to rule.*
 Experior, experīri, expertus sum; 4th conj. *to try.*

- Glorior, gloriāri, gloriātus sum; 1st conj. to boast.
 Interprētor, interpretāri, interpretātus sum; 1st conj. to explain.
 Lamentor, lamentāri, lamentātus sum; 1st conj. to bewail.
 Mereor, merēri, merētus sum; 2d conj. to deserve.
 Miror, mirāri, mirātus sum; 1st conj. to wonder.
 Morior, mori, mortuus sum; 3d conj. to die.
 Opēror, operāri, operātus sum; 1st conj. to work.
 Orior, ori and orīri, ortus sum; 3d and 4th conj. to rise.
 Paciscor, pacisci, pactus sum; 3d conj. to bargain.
 Partior, partīri, partītus sum; 4th conj. to divide.
 Prædor, prædāri, prædātus sum; 1st conj. to plunder.
 Queror, queri, questus sum; 3d conj. to complain.
 Recordor, recordāri, recordātus sum; 1st conj. to remember.
 Tutor, tutāri, tutātus sum; 1st conj. to defend.
 Utor, uti, usus sum; 3d conj. to use.
 Vagor, vagāri, vagātus sum; 1st conj. to wander.
-

PARTICIPLES.

Q. What is a Participle?

A. A Participle is a kind of adjective, formed from a verb; and in its meaning it has reference to time.

Q. Why is it called a Participle?

*A. From the Latin word *particeps*, a partaker, one who takes part of any thing, because it partakes of the nature of an adjective and a verb.*

Q. How many participles has a Latin verb?

*A. Four: two in the active voice, as *amans*, loving; *amatūrus*, about to love; and two in the passive voice, as *amātus*, loved; *amandus*, to be loved.*

GERUNDS.

Q. What are Gerunds?

A. Gerunds are participial words, partaking of the nature of a noun, and of a verb.

Q. How are they like nouns?

A. In their form: for they are declined in all cases except the vocative, like a neuter noun of the second declension, and are governed like nouns.

Q. In what respects are they like verbs?

A. In their possessing time, and having the signification of the verbs from which they are derived, and governing the same case.

SUPINES.

Q. What are Supines?

A. Supines are also participial words. They are like the accusative and ablative cases of nouns of the fourth declension, and have the signification of the verb from which they are derived.

ADVERBS.

Q. What is an Adverb?

A. An Adverb is an indeclinable word added to a verb, adjective, or other adverb, to affect or alter its signification.

Q. Why is it so called?

A. From the Latin word *ad*, which means *to*, and from *verbum*, which means a *word*; because it is always connected with some verb, adjective or other adverb.

PREPOSITIONS.

Q. What is a Preposition?

A. A Preposition is an indeclinable word, which shows the relation of one thing to another; and which governs nouns in the accusative and ablative cases.

Q. From what do Prepositions derive their name?

A. From two Latin words, namely, *præ*, which means *before*; and *positum*, (the supine of the verb *pono*,) which

means *to put* or *place*; as these words are always *placed before nouns*.

Q. How many prepositions govern the accusative case?
A. Thirty-two.*

EXAMPLES OF PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.¹

Ad,	<i>to;</i>	Cicero scripsit ² epistolas ad Atticum.
Adversum,	<i>against;</i>	Bonus civis facit nihil adversum leges.
Adversus,	<i>opposite to;</i> <i>towards;</i>	Carthago fuit adversus Italianam.
Ante,	<i>before;</i>	Coles justitiam adversus omnes.
Apud,	<i>at;</i>	Venit ante noitem.
	<i>among;</i>	Caesar posuit ⁴ ejus ⁵ castra apud Iconium.
Circa,	<i>about;</i>	Bonus vir amabitur apud omnes.
Circum,	<i>about;</i>	Reges habent praesidia circum se.
Circiter,	<i>about;</i>	Fuit negligens circa ejus salutem.
Cis,	<i>on this side;</i>	Ille venit ad me circiter octavam horam.
Citra,	<i>within;</i>	Gallia est citra Italianam.
Contra,	<i>against;</i> <i>contrary to;</i>	Videbo te cis paucos dies.
Erga,	<i>towards;</i>	Ille vivit contra naturam.
Extra,	<i>without;</i>	Hannibal duxit exercitum ad Romanum contra expectationem.
Infra,	<i>beneath;</i> <i>within;</i>	Deus est bonus erga homines.
		Ille est extra vitium.
		Vitiōsus vir est infra observationem ullius.
		Veni infra decem dies.

* The pupil had better commit them to memory.

The words will be found in the general vocabulary.

² See scribo. ³ Imperative mode of colo. ⁴ See pono.

⁵ *Ejus* genitive singular of *is*, (see page 44,) and means *of him*, or *of her*, or *of it*; and may be translated *his*, *hers*, or *its*; as,

pone ejus tergum,
behind his back.

⁶ See duco.

Inter,	<i>between;</i>	Amor inter liberos et parentes est magnus.
Intra,	<i>in the midst of; within;</i>	Epaminondas periit inter pugnam. <i>Intra decem dies: intra muros.</i>
Juxta,	<i>near;</i>	Tumulus Hectoris est juxta Trojam.
Ob,	<i>for;</i>	Faciam ob agmina emolumendum.
Penes,	<i>in the power of;</i>	Omnis sunt penes Deum.
Per,	<i>through;</i>	Nauta agit navim per mare, et per scopulos.
	<i>by;</i>	Servitium interdicitur per naturam et per leges.
Pone,	<i>with permission of;</i>	Non facies per me.
Post,	<i>behind;</i>	Manus vincitae sunt ¹ pone ejus tergum.
Præter,	<i>after;</i>	Post mortem est judicium.
	<i>except;</i>	Omnes, præter unum, condemnaverunt eum.
	<i>before;</i>	Hector occisus est ² præter oculos Trojanorum.
	<i>contrary to;</i>	Recepi tuas epistolas præter expectationem.
Prope, ³	<i>near;</i>	Siste prope me.
	<i>about;</i>	Sere frumentum prope mensem Junii.
Propter,	<i>near, or by the side of;</i>	Amnis Eurotas fluit propter Lacedæmonem.
	<i>on account of;</i>	Amo te propter sinceritatem.
Secundum,	<i>after, next to;</i>	Ama tuos parentes secundum Deum.
	<i>according to;</i>	Mors est secundum naturam.
Secus,	<i>by, along;</i>	Processit secus viam ad Romanos.
Supra,	<i>above, over;</i>	Nubes sunt supra nos.
Trans,	<i>over, across;</i>	Via ad Britanniam est trans Atlanticum mare.
Ultra,	<i>beyond;</i>	Ille est ultra puerilem etatem.

¹ See *vincio*. ² For *occisus est*, see *occido*. Observe that the penult is long in this word, so as to distinguish it from *occido*, which means to sit.

³ *Prope* perhaps is rather an adverb: when it governs an accusative *ad* is understood. However, as it is frequently used alone, it may be classed with the prepositions. ⁴ See *procedo*.

Usque,	<i>as far as;</i>	Tendebat usque Romam.
Versus,	<i>towards;</i>	Cæsar duxit exercitum <i>versus</i> Brundusium.

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ABLATIVE.

Q. How many prepositions govern the Ablative?

A. Thirteen.

EXAMPLES.

A,	<i>by;</i>	Clodius occisus est <i>a</i> Milone.
Ab,	{ <i>from;</i>	Cicero accepit maximos ¹ honores
Abs,	{	<i>a</i> Romanis.
Absque,	<i>without;</i>	Judex nunquam punisset absque testimoniis.
Coram,	{ <i>before, in the</i>	{ Habuit orationem coram omnibus.
	{ <i>presence of;</i>	
Cum,	<i>with;</i>	Populus Romanus gessit ² bellum
		<i>cum</i> Jugurtha.
De,	<i>of, concerning;</i>	Grotius scripsit ³ librum <i>de</i> jure pacis et belli.
	<i>from;</i>	Nihil relictum est ⁴ <i>de</i> tanto patrimonio.
	<i>according to;</i>	Bonus puer faciet omnia <i>de</i> voluntate ejus parentum. ⁵
E,	{ <i>from;</i>	Aromata veniunt <i>ex</i> Indiâ.
Ex,	{ <i>according to;</i>	Condemnabatur <i>e</i> sententiâ judicis.
Palam,	{ <i>before, in the</i>	{ Demosthenes habuit orationem <i>de</i>
	{ <i>presence of;</i>	{ Philippo palam Atheniensibus.
Præ,	<i>before;</i>	Antonius tulit ⁶ pugionem præsse.
	<i>in comparison with;</i>	Bonus vir, quamvis pauper, est felix <i>præ</i> malo viro, quamvis dives est.
Pro,	<i>for;</i>	Dedi viginti minas <i>pro</i> his libris.
	<i>in favor of;</i>	Cicero fecit verba <i>pro</i> Milone.
Sine,	<i>without;</i>	Nihil magnum agitur ⁷ <i>sine</i> periculo.

¹ See magnus.

² See gero.

³ See scribo.

⁴ See relinquō.

⁵ See page 18.

⁶ Tuli is the 3d per. sing. perf. ind. of the irregular verb *fero*, and means he carried. See Vocab.

⁷ See ago.

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE.

Q. How many Prepositions govern the *Accusative* and *Ablative*

A. Five.

EXAMPLES.

Clam,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{secretly,} \\ \text{unknown to;} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} (\text{acc.}) \text{ Face nihil clam tuos parentes.} \\ (\text{abl.}) \text{ Cicero vidit Fulviam clam conspirato-} \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{ribus.} \end{array} \right.$
In,	<i>to;</i>	(acc.) Milites vocabantur <i>in</i> arma.
	<i>into;</i>	(acc.) Milites ruebant <i>in</i> pugnam.
	<i>against;</i>	(acc.) Deus est iratus <i>in</i> malos.
	<i>in;</i>	(abl.) Sunt multa templa <i>in</i> Româ.
	<i>towards;</i>	(abl.) Bonus vir est lenis <i>in</i> hoste.
	<i>within;</i>	(abl.) Vidēbo te <i>in</i> paucis diēbus.
Sub,	<i>under;</i>	(acc.) Græci pugnabant cum Trojānis <i>sub</i> muros Trojæ.
	<i>beneath;</i>	(abl.) Venator manet <i>sub</i> frigido Jove.*
Subter,	<i>beneath;</i>	(acc.) Margaritæ sunt <i>subter</i> mare.
	<i>under;</i>	(abl.) Græci oppugnaverunt muros <i>subter</i> testudine.
Super,	<i>above;</i>	(acc.) Dominus est <i>super</i> servum.
	<i>beyond;</i>	(acc.) Græcia est <i>super</i> Italiam.
	<i>upon;</i>	(abl.) Dormias cum me <i>super</i> viridi fronde.
	<i>about;</i>	(abl.) Scripsit ad me <i>super</i> libris.

PREPOSITION GOVERNING THE GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE.

Q. What Preposition is there which governs the Genitive plural, and the Ablative of both numbers?

A. *Tenus.*

Q. What is there peculiar to this preposition?

A. It is always *put after* the noun which it governs.

Q. Will you give me some examples of this?

* See Jupiter.

4. The genitive is governed by a substantive noun expressed or understood, a verbal adjective, or a verb.
5. The dative is governed by adjectives and verbs.
6. The accusative is governed by an active verb, or by a preposition; or is placed before the infinitive.
7. The vocative stands by itself, or has an interjection joined with it.
8. The ablative is governed by a preposition expressed or understood.
9. The infinitive is governed by some verb or adjective.

GENERAL RULES OF CONSTRUCTION.

Q. Are the words in the Latin language placed in sentences in the natural English order?

A. They are not, but are arranged in such a manner as to make the sentence sound most harmoniously.

Q. Why does not this manner of collocation cause confusion in the sense?

A. Because the endings of the nouns, and the variations of the adjectives and verbs show their relation, and direct in what manner each word should be taken in.

Q. Give an example?

2 4 1 3

A. Labor omnia imprōbus vincit.

labour all things persevering conquers.

If these Latin words be construed in the order in which they stand, they make no sense: but if they be construed as they are numbered, that is, according to the *General Rules of Construction*, a correct English sentence is made, which is, *persevering labour conquers all things.** (Let the pupil repeat the substance of the note.)

* The Latin language, from its admitting so much transposition, possesses a great advantage over the English. Thus we can say *Ha-*

Q. What are some of the *General Rules of Construction?*

A.

Rule 1.

Construe the nominative case first, with the adjective or words that belong to it, if there be any:—then, the verb:—then, the word or words which the verb governs:—lastly, the preposition, if there be any, with the word depending on it.

Rule 2.

A genitive case is usually construed after another noun.

Rule 3.

An infinitive mode, is generally construed after another verb.

Rule 4.

An adjective or participle, if no other word depend on it, must be construed before its noun.

nibälem vicit Scipio, or Scipio vicit Hannibälem, or Scipio Hannibälem vicit, or vicit Scipio Hannibälem. The sense is the same, *Scipio conquered Hannibal.* Because, according to the Rules of Construction, in whatever order the words may be placed, we must take in the nominative, *Scipio*, first; then the verb, *vicit*; then the word which the verb governs, which is the accusative *Hannibälem*. But in English we can state the fact only by one order, *Scipio conquered Hannibal*. If we reverse the order and say *Hannibal conquered Scipio*, we state what is not true. If we say *Scipio Hannibal conquered*, or *Hannibal Scipio conquered*, we state an ambiguous proposition, or write a sentence which has no meaning. The chief reason why the Latin admits of this transposition, is the changes which nouns undergo in their different cases. In Latin the nominative of a verb would be altered if made the object of it, as, nom. *Hannibal*, acc. *Hannibälem*. But in English it would remain the same; as when we say *Hannibal conquered Scipio*, *Hannibal* is the nominative; should we say *Scipio conquered Hannibal*, *Hannibal* would be the object of the verb, but would not be changed in its form.

Rule 5.

If an adjective or participle govern a word *after* it, it must be construed after its noun.

Rule 6.

In an ablative absolute, construe the noun *before* the adjective or participle which agrees with it.

Rule 7.

An adverb is not to be construed with a noun, but rather with a verb, or an adjective, or a participle.

Rule 8.

After a preposition constantly look for an accusative or ablative case.

Rule 9.

The word governed must generally be construed *immediately* after the word which governs it.

CONCORD.

Q. What words agree together in sentences?

A. 1. A noun with another noun. 2. An adjective with a noun. 3. A verb with a nominative.

1. *Agreement of one noun with another.*

RULE I. Nouns signifying the same thing, agree in case.

Examples.

Cicero orator.

Cato, vir fortis.

Urbs Athenea.

Deus, auctor omnium.¹

¹ *Omnium* is an adjective in the genitive plural, and means *of all*, and agrees with *negotiorum* understood. As it has no noun here with which it agrees, it means *of all things*.

English Examples.

Our master comes,	Noster magister venio.
The good boy learns,	Bonus puer disco.
The body is mortal,	Corpus mortalis sum.
Death is certain,	Mors certus sum.
Life is uncertain,	Vita incertus sum.
The earth is round,	Terra sum rotundus.
The stars are bright,	Stella sum clarus.
Time flies,	Tempus fugio.
I was weeping,	Fleo.
The king will conquer,	Rex vincō.
May fortune favour,	Fortūna faveo.
Good boys will be praised,	Bonus puer laudo.
The oars are broken,	Remus frango.
The soldiers will be killed,	Miles interficio.
Let kings be honoured,	Rex honōro.

Accusative before the Infinitive.

RULE IV. The infinitive mode has an accusative before it; as,

Gaudeo te¹ valēre,

I am glad that you are well.

Virgilius jussērat² sua carmina cremāri,

Virgil ordered that his poems should be burnt.

Latin Examples.

Volo te venisse. Scio Petrum flēre.

Amor jussit me scribēre.

¹ To the noun before the infinitive, must always be prefixed the English particle *that*.

² *Jussērat* from *jubeo*.

Ferunt¹ Anaxagoram nunquam risisse.²

Scio Regem regnare. Scis me amare verum.³

Sepulchrum⁴ Cyri aperīri Alexander jussit.

Audivimus Epaminondam esse modestum, prudentem, clementem, patientemque.⁵

Virgilius dicit labōrem vincēre omnia.

Scimus solem esse lucem mundi.

Auctōres dicunt Helēnāim esse causam belli Trojāni.

English Examples.

I hear that you are ill, Audio tu *segrotō*.

The messenger relates that Nuntius narro praelium pug-
a battle has been fought, no, et hostis vinco.
and that the enemies have
been defeated.

I confess that I have sinned. Confiteor ego peccato.

We say that death will come. Dico mors venio.

Do you see that the sun Video sol luceo? shines?

Horace says that anger is a short madness.

I am glad that thou hast re- Gaudeo tu redeo.
turned.

¹ *Ferunt* comes from the irregular verb *fervo*; it is found in the indicative mode, present tense, third person plural, and means *they say*.

2. Risse from video.

⁸ Verum is in the accusative by rule 18th.

⁴ See the first rule of construction.

⁵ Que is a conjunction, which is often added to the end of the word which it connects.

English Examples.

The wonders of the world Miraculūm mundus sum sep-
are seven:

1. The Pyramids of Egypt, Pyramis *Egyptus*.
2. The Tower of Pharos, Turris *Pharus*.
3. The Walls of Babylon, Murus *Babylonius*.
4. The Temple of Diana, Templum *Diana*.
5. The Sepulchre of Mausō- Sepulchrum *Mausolus*,

6. The Colossus of Rhodes, Colossus *Rhodus*.
7. The Statue of Olympian Jupiter Statua *Jupiter Olympius*.

Jupiter.

Piety is the foundation of all Pietas sum omni virtus fun-
the virtues. damentum.

Anger is the beginning of Ira sum dementia initium.
madness.

Envy is the attendant of Invidia sum comes virtus.
virtue.

Sleep is the image of death. Somnus sum mors imāgo.

The event of war is uncer- Eventus bellum sum incertus.
tain.

Helen was the cause of the Helēna causa sum bellum
Trojan war. Trojānus.

RULE VII. But if the latter Noun have an Adjective of description joined with it, it may be put in the genitive or ablative; as,

Vir summae prudentiæ, Gen. or,
summā prudentiâ, Abl.
a man of the greatest prudence.

Latin Examples.

Vir summæ prudentiæ. Puer probâ indole.
 Consul parvo et pravo anîmo.
 Cimon Atheniensis fuit vir summâ liberalitâte.
 Epaminondas fuit dux incredibili virtute.
 Amo puërum ingenii präclari.
 Cicero fuit vir miti ingenio.
 Cato vir magnâ auctoritâte.
 Diogënes fuit acerbâ natûrâ.
 Magister facilè döchet puëros ingenii acutis.
 Gallus quidam, eximiâ corporis magnitudine.

English Examples.

A man of no experience in Vir nullum stipendium¹ bel-
 war. lumen.
 A woman of high birth. Mulier magnus ortus.
 Athens was a city of great Athénæ sum' urbs magnus
 splendour. splendor.
 He was a boy of a studious Ille sum puer studiosus in-
 disposition. dölös.
 She was a girl of great mo- Ille sum puëlla eximus mo-
 destia. destia.
 Cicero was an orator of con- Cicero sum orator präclarus
 summate eloquence. eloquentia.
 Hannibal was a general of Hannibal sum imperator vir-
 wonderful courage. tus admirabilis.
 Fabius was a general of great Fabius sum dux magnus pru-
 prudence. dentiae.

¹ Experience in war may be rendered by the genitive of the noun *stipendium*, 2d declension, neuter; it means literally soldiers' wages; for a man who had received no soldier's pay, was said to have had no experience in war.

Adjectives taken as Substantives.

RULE VIII. An Adjective in the neuter gender, without a Noun with which it agrees, governs the genitive; as,

Multum pecuniæ,
much of money, or much money.

Plus eloquentiæ,
more of eloquence, or more eloquence.

Latin Examples.

Habeo tantum otii. Assequēbar tantum boni.

Est multum mali in exemplo.

Est multum mali in discordiā.

Narrābo cūm habeo aliquid novi.

Quid consiliī capies?

Decrēvit quondam Senatus, ut Lucius Opimius vidēret, ne
quid res publica detrimenti caperet.

Gloria habet plus molestiæ quam voluptatis.

Qui¹ habet paululum pecuniæ, habet etiam paululum fidei.

English Examples.

What is the news? Quis novus (*gen. sing.*) sum?

He has no sincerity: (*no-* Ille habet nullus sinceras
thing of sincerity.)

How much money have you? Quantus pecunia habes?
(*how much of money.*)

There is very great good² in Sum multus bonus in amicitia.
friendship.

¹ Qui to be rendered by *he, who.*

² Very great good, plurimum boni.

He has very little¹ courage, Ille habeo parvus fortitudo,
but very much honesty. sed multus probitas.

Where there is most study Ubi sum multus studium, ibi
there is least noise. sum parvus clamor.

RULE IX. *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying *need*,
are followed by the ablative; as,

Est opus pecuniā,
there is need of money.

Latin Examples.

Est usus virībus.

Opus est monitōre.

Opus est magistratībus.

Nihil opus est oratiōne longā.

Clamas, cum opus est tacito.²

Si vis esse doctus, opus est diligentia.

English Examples.

There is need of brevity. Est brevitas opus.

There is need of thy au- Opus sum tuus auctoritas.
thority.

There is need of your atten- Opus sum vester attentio et
tion and prudence. prudentia.

There is no occasion for dis- Nihil usus sum lis.
putes.

There is no occasion for Nihil opus sum verbum.
words.

In trouble there is need of In dolor opus sum amicus
the counsels of a friend. consilium.

¹ Very little to be rendered by the superlative.

² *Tacito*, an adjective used for a noun, and means silence.

II. THE GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

1. *Adjectives governing the Genitive.*

RULE X. Verbal Adjectives, or such as imply an operation of the mind, require the genitive; as,

*cupidus gloriæ,
desirous of glory.*

Latin Examples.

- 1 Bonus¹ est ignarus frāudis. 2 Scipio fuit expertus belli.²
- 3 Miles Romānus fuit patiens³ algōris et famis.
- 4 Ejus mens est conscia recti.⁴
- Avārus est studiōsus pecuniæ.
- Illa est laudis avīda.
- Bonus est memor beneficiōrum.
- Cæsar fuit cupidus triumphi.
- Posteritas nunquam erit immēmor hujus rei.
- Est natūra homīnum novitatis avīda.
- Anīmus, futūri anxius, calamitōsus est.
- Tempus edax rerum.

English Examples.

- The mind of men is ignorant Nescius mens homo fatum.
of fate.
- I am not unmindful of your Non sum tuus mandātum im-
commands. mēmor.

¹ Vir is here understood. Translate bonus, a good man.

² Belli literally means of war, but in connexion with the adjective *expertus*, we should say, according to our English idiom, in war.

³ Patiens, patient of, that is, able to bear.

⁴ Recti, an adjective, used for a noun, and means of right, that is, of rectitude.

Cæsar was skilled¹ in many Cæsar doctus sum multus res.
things.

A soldier experienced in Miles bellum expertus.
war.

The mind is capable of every Mens omnis virtus sum capax.
virtue.

Many are more desirous of Multus sum dispūto² quam
disputing than of the truth. veritas avidus.

Live mindful of old age and Vivo memor senectus et mors.
death.

Crœsus was most greedy of Aurum avidus Crœsus sum.
gold.

RULE XI. Partitives,³ comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural; as,

Optimus omnium,	Unus nostrum,
<i>the best of all.</i>	<i>one of us.</i>

Latin Examples.

Quis mortalium?	Multæ arborum.
Aliquis philosophorum.	Una musarum.
Senior fratrum.	Quis nostrum.
Octavus sapientum.	

¹ In many things must be rendered by the genitive, in connexion with the adjective skilful.

² Use the genitive of the gerund. See Rule 32, Obs. 2d.

³ Words are called *partitives* when they mean *part of* any number: thus, *aliquis* is a *partitive*, because it means *some one*: as, *aliquis philosophorum*, *some one of the philosophers*, that is *some part of that class of men*. *Comparatives* and *superlatives* are adjectives of the comparative and superlative degrees. *Interrogatives* ask a question. *Numerals* define some number.

Cicero fuit doctissimus Romanorum.
 Aristotēles et Plato omnium Græcorum fūerunt doctissimi.
 Pavo est formosissima omnium avium.
 Stultissima animalium sunt lanata.
 Beneficiōrum maxima sunt ea quae a parentibus accipimus.
 Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit.

English Examples.

- Calumny is the most baneful Omnis res sum nocens calumnia.
- Plato was the most learned Plato philosōphus Græcus sum of the Grecian philosophi doctus.
- The Amazon is the greatest Amāzon omnis flumen sum of all rivers. magnus.
- Death is the end of all things.¹ Mors sum omnis finis.
- Which of you were here yes- Quis tu hic herē sum? terday?
- He is the elder of the bro- Ille sum frater senex. thers.
- The lion is the bravest of Leo sum animal fortis. animals.
- The first of the Roman kings Prior rex Romānus sum Romulus. was Romulus.
- Demosthenes was the most Græcus orātor præstans sum distinguished of the Gre- Demosthēnes. cian orators.

¹ *Of all things*, to be rendered by *omnium* only: the word *things* is seldom expressed in Latin, but the adjective is put in the neuter gender, and agrees with a noun understood.

2. Adjectives govern the Dative.

RULE XII. Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, &c. govern the Dative; or, any Adjective may govern the Dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English; as,

Utilis bello, Amīcus omnībus,
useful for war. *friendly to all.*

Latin Examples.

- | | |
|---|----------------------------|
| Utilis bello. | Perniciōsus reipublīcæ. |
| Simīlis patri. | Nil mortalībus arduum est. |
| Niger est color contrarius albo. | Ea res vobis utilis est. |
| Quis amicior quam frater fratri? | |
| Nemo fuit reipublīcæ perniciosior. | |
| Tempus vobis est opportunissimum. | |
| Gallia est contigua Hispaniæ. | |
| Ptolemæus tam ridicūlus Rōmānis, quam cruentus civībus
fuit. | |
| Gens Trojāna fuit Junōni inimica. | |
| Catilīna fuit omnībus bonis invīsus. | |

English Examples.

- | | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| A good boy is kind to ani- mals. | Bonus puer animal sum lenis. |
| He was grateful to his ¹ pa- tron. | Ille sum is patrōnus gratus. |
| Spain is next to Portugal. | Hispania Lusitania sum pro- prior. |

¹ *His* is rendered in Latin by *eius*, of him; the genitive of the adjective pronoun is, *ea*, *id*, he, she, it; see page 44.

- Death is like sleep. Mors somno similis sum.
 The stars are convenient to Stella sum nauta commōdus.
 mariners.
- Death is common to all. Mors omnis communis sum.
 A good man is merciful to Bonus is inimicus sum mitis.
 his enemies.
- Nothing is difficult to a brave Nihil fortis sum difficilis.
 man.
- A rose is often next to a Urtica proprietor sēpe rosa est.
 -thorn.

3. Adjectives governing the Ablative.

RULE XHI. These adjectives, *dignus*, *indignus*, *contentus*, *prædictus*, *captus*, and *fretus*; also *natus*, *satus*, *ortus*, *editus*, and the like, govern the ablative; as,

Dignus honōre, Contentus parvo, Ortus régibus,
 worthy of honour. content with little. descended from kings.

Latin Examples.

- Cicero fuit dignus honore.
 Ille dives¹ qui contentus est parvo.
 Ille summo magistratu prædictus fuit.
 Homerus fuit captus² oculis.
 Milites, suis viribus freti, vicērunt.
 Cæsar negotiis amicorum intentus fuit.
 Mecenas fuit editus regibus.
 Parvo contenta natura est.

¹ *Est* is understood.

² *Captus* is the perfect passive participle of *capio*, and means taken; here it means deprived of.

Achilles¹ fuit natus Thetide.²
 Romulus³ fuit satus divinā stirpe.
 Hic puer est dignus laude.

English Examples.

Learn⁴ to be content with Disco sum parvus contentus.
 little.

How happens it,⁵ that no one Qui fit, ut nemo ~~is~~ ^{are} ~~sor~~ ^{giv} ~~viv~~ ^{fe} lives⁶ contented with his contentus.
 lot?

Those only are happy who Qui virtus præditus sunt, so-
 are endowed with virtue. ~~is~~ ^{beat} ~~er~~ ^{re} ~~no~~

Catiline⁷ was descended Catilina nobilis stirps ortus
 from a noble family. sum. ~~part~~

Do nothing unworthy of a Fac nihil vir indignus.
 man.

Relying on his own strength, Frētus suus vis, vice ~~er~~ ⁱⁿ ~~rebus~~
 he conquered.

He who is content with his Qui suus (plur.) contentus
 own is truly the most opu- sum, is verè dives. ~~sumus~~
 lent. ~~er~~ ^{re} ~~re~~ ^{re} ~~re~~

¹ Achilles was one of the Grecian generals who went to the Trojan war. He was killed with an arrow, by Paris.

² Thetide from Thetis, who was one of the sea deities.

³ Romulus was the founder of Rome, 753 years before Christ.

⁴ Learn is in the imperative mode—put the Latin in the 2d person singular.

⁵ How happens it, is a phrase to be rendered by quā fit; quā is an adverb, for the ablative quo, by what; modo, manner, being understood: quo modo, in what manner, or by what means. Fit is from the irregular verb fio, to be done, to happen; indicative mode, present tense, 3d person singular; fio, fis, fit: plural, sumus, fitis, fiunt.

⁶ The conjunction ut requires that viro should be put in the subjunctive mode.

⁷ Catiline was an infamous Roman who conspired with others to destroy his country.

He who is kind to the poor *Qui pauper benevolus,* is dignus sum honor.

4. Adjectives governing the Genitive or Ablative.

RULE XIV. Adjectives of plenty or want, govern the genitive or ablative; as,

Omnia sunt plena Dei,

all things are full of God.

Ille est inops virtute, or virtutis,

he is void of virtue.

Latin Examples.

Plenus iræ. *Inops ratione.*
Ille est abundans divitiis. *Omnia Dei sunt plena.*

Nemo est vacuus molestia.

Decem naves fuerunt frumento opustæ.

Diogenes fuit sapientia quam pecunia locupletior.

Terra est ferox Ceresis.¹

Quanquam pauper argenti et auri, multum honoratus est.

Solitudo, et vita sine amicis, insidiarum et metus plena est.

English Examples.

Italy was then full of Greek arts and discipline. *Italia tunc ars et disciplina plena.*

Strength, without counsel, is Vis, consilium expers, nihil nothing. *sum.*

Although destitute of the comforts of life, he was happy. *Etsi vita solatium inops, sum felix.*

Brutes are without reason. *Bestia ratio sum expers.*

¹ Ceres was the goddess of corn and tillage, and is here put for corn itself, by a figure of speech called *metonymy*.

I see that you will be¹ free Video tu fore periculum om-
from all danger. nis expers.

The harbour is very full of Portus navis plenus sum.
ships.

He was laden with the spoils Ille Oriens spoliū sum onus-
of the East. tus.

III. THE GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

1. VERBS GOVERNING ONE CASE ONLY.

1. *Verbs which govern the Genitive.*

RULE XV. The verb *Sum*, when it signifies possession, property, or duty, governs the genitive; as,

Est regis,
it is of the king, or, it is the king's; that is,
it is the property of the king.

Latin Examples.

Est² fortis animi non perturbari in rebus aspēris.³

Est insipientis non velle⁴ discere.

Hic hortus est patris.

¹ *That you will be;* use the accusative before the infinitive *fore*, which means, *to be hereafter*.

² *Est* is here used impersonally, or without any nominative. But strictly speaking, the latter clause of the sentence, *non perturbari in rebus aspēris*, is the nominative. For the nominative is always the answer to the question, *what?* So here the question is, *what is the part of a brave mind?* and the answer, *non perturbari in rebus aspēris*, *not to be troubled in adversity*, is the nominative to *est*.

³ *In rebus aspēris*, literally means *in rough or severe affairs*, *in hardships*, or elegantly, *in adversity*.

⁴ *Velle* is the infinitive of the irregular verb *volo*, infinitive *velle*, perfect *volui*, *to be willing*, or *to wish*.

Est militum parere suo duci.¹
 Hominis est errare. Hi libri sunt mei sobrini.
 Temeritas est florentis ætatis,² prudentia³ senectutis.
 Amici est adjuvare ejus amicum.
 Est nullius, nisi insipientis in errore perseverare.
 Est oratoris apte, distincte, ornatèque dicere.

English Examples.

This house is my father's, Hic domus sum pater meus;
 but that orchard is a neighbour's, sed iste pomarium sum vicinus.

The books are now my brother's. Liber sum meus frater.

To contemn riches⁴ is the Divitiae contemno sum magna part of a great mind. nus animus.

It is the part of a foolish boy Sum stultus puer studium nemo to neglect his studies.⁵ gligo.

It is the part of a master to Sum magister doceo. teach.

It is the duty of him to speak, Is loquor sum, sed ille audio. but of them to hear.

RULE XVI. *Misereor, miserresco, and satago* govern the genitive; as,

Miserere tuorum civium,
Pity your countrymen.

¹ *Duci* from *dux*, in the dative, and governed by *parere*, by observation 5th, under rule 17th.

² *Florentis ætatis*, literally, of flourishing age; elegantly, of youth.

³ *Est* is here understood.

⁴ Put the Latin of *riches* in the accusative case, by rule 18th.

⁵ Put the Latin of *studies* also in the accusative.

Latin Examples.

Satāgit suārum rerum.

Miserēre labōrum¹ tantōrum.

Miserescīte regis. Est boni viri, paupērum miserēre.

Miserēre domūs labentis.²

Irārum et molestiārum muliebrium Xantippe satagēbat.

English Examples.

I pity his distress for food.³ Misereor is esuria.

Pity my brother. Misereor frater.

Death pities neither rich nor poor. Mors nec dives nec pauper miseresco.

He who is always busy in his studies, will be learned. Qui studium suus satāgo, sum doctus.

2. *Verbs governing the Dative.*

RULE XVII. Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English; as,

Finis venit imperio,
an end has come to the empire.

Latin Examples.

Anīmus⁴ redit hostībus. Mala eveniunt bonis.⁵

Non nobis solum nati sumus. Sol lucet etiam scelerātis.

¹ Labōrum here means hardships.

² Labentis is the present participle of the deponent verb *labor*.

³ Distress for food, esuria, noun, *fem.* 1st declension.

⁴ Anīmus here means courage.

⁵ When the adjective is thus used without a substantive expressed, *homo*, or *negotium*, is generally understood; as in this case *mala* means evils, that is, mala negotia, evil things; *bonis*, to good, that is, bonis hominībus, to good men.

341 CM

Hæret latěri lethālis arundo.
Tu ne cede malis, sed contra audentior īto.
Natūra animalibus varia tegumenta tribuit.
Homīni soli avaritia data est.

English Examples.

Fortune is prejudicial to the **Fortuna officio mens.**
mind.

To give way to the time is Tempus cedo sapiens sum.
the part of a wise man.

A fleet of seventy ships was Classis septuaginta navium given to Miltiades. Miltiades dedo. (*perf. pass.*)

Praise is due to virtue. Laus virtus debeo.

[The dative, however, cannot always be rendered by the signs TO and FOR. Under this rule, therefore, it will be necessary to give, in a few observations, such verbs as cannot be followed by these signs.]

Observation First. SUM and its compounds govern the dative; (except possum,) as,

Præfuit exercitui, **Adfuit precibus.**
he commanded the army. *he was present at prayers.*

Latin Examples.

Adero^t tuis rebus difficillimis.

Cicero præfuit toti provinciæ.

Nec sibi nec altéri prosunt.

Nostro sermōni² interfuit.

Pudor non obfuit oratiōni.

⁴ *Adēro* from *adsum*.

² *Sermōni* here means *conversation*.

Dum aliquid virium¹ tibi sup̄est.
Creāti sunt decem pr̄tores, qui exercitui pr̄cessent.

English Examples.

In this than there was much Hic homo (*dat.*) multum² vanity. nitas (*gen.*) insum.

Brutus commanded the fleet. Brutus classis pr̄sum.

Cicero was not present at Cicēro Pharsalia pugna non the battle of Pharsalia. adsum.

Observation Second. EST taken for *Habeo*, to have, governs the dative of a person; as,

Liber est mihi,

a book is to me, that is, I have a book.

Dico libros esse mihi,

I say that books are to me, that is, I say that I have books.

Latin Examples.

Est mihi pater. Sunt nobis mitia poma.

Magna vis est leōni. Est mihi nomen Alexandri.

Antiquissimis hominibus specus erant pro domibus.

Sed Macedonib⁹ assidua certamina cum Thracib⁹ et Illyriis fuēre.

English Examples.

I have a good knife. Bonus culter ego sum.

I have sweet verses. Sum ego dulcis carmen.

The hare has great swiftness. Magnus sum velocitas lepus.

The Romans had many battles with the Carthageni- Romanus cum Carthageni- sis multus certamen sum. ans.

¹ Virium from vis; governed by aliquid, by rule 8th.

² See Rule 8th.

Observation Third. Verbs compounded with **SATIS**, **BENĒ**, and **MALE**, govern the dative.

Latin Examples.

Satisfēcit mihi per litēras. Dii tibi benefaciant.¹

Maledixit mihi sine² ullā causā.

Tuis amīcis malefācis.

Pulchrum est benefacēre reipublīcā.

Tempus est ludēre cūm seriis rebus satisfecerimus.

English Examples.

Do evil to no one. Nemo malefacio.

It is delightful to serve your friends. Gratus sum benefacio amīcus.

He discharged his duty. Is (gen.) officium satisfacio.

Observation Fourth. Many verbs compounded with these ten prepositions, **AD**, **ANTE**, **CON**, **IN**, **INTER**, **OB**, **PRAE**, **POST**, **SUB**, and **SUPER**, govern the dative.

Latin Examples.

Annuē³ audacībus cōptis.

Hūc vestris oris pauci adnavīmus.

Antecellit omnībus in cursu.

Puer gestit antecellēre parībus.

Mors inmīnet omnībus.

¹ Observe to give to *benefaciant* the sign of the subjunctive mode, *may*, and put it before the English of *Dii*; as, *may the Gods, &c.*

² See the prepositions which govern the ablative.

³ *Annuē*, compounded of *ad* and *nūo*. In almost every case when the preposition is compounded with a verb, the last consonant of the preposition is changed into the consonant with which the verb begins; as, *inmīnet* for *inmīnet*; *annue* for *adnue*; *officio* for *obficio*; this change is made to make the enunciation easier.

Nox prælio intervēnit.

Omnes occubuērunt morti.

Ego meis majorib⁹ præluxi.

Vir bonus succurrit misēris.

Supervenit timidis juvenib⁹.

Nemo enim alt̄eri imperium volens concēdit.

English Examples.

Man excels all other ani- Homo omnis cæter animal an-
mals. tecēdo.

Mars presides over arms. Mars arma præsideo.

During the conspiracy of Ca- In Catilina conjuratio mag-
tiline, great danger im- nus periculum Cicero im-
pended over Cicero. pendeo.

Ariovistus interdicted the Ariovistus omnis Gallia (*abl.*)
Romans from all Gaul. Romānus interdīco.

Cæsar resolved to forbear Cæsar prælium supersedeo
fighting. (inf.) statuo.

Observation Fifth. Verbs govern the dative which signifiy to profit or hurt; to favour or assist; to command and obey; to serve and resist; to threaten and to be angry; to trust.

Latin Examples.

Prospexit ejus salūti. Rogo ut faveas mihi.

Nihil officiat² frugib⁹. Mihi minabitur.

Bonus ejus amīcis succurret. Fidit narratiōni.

Socrates³ imperāvit cupiditatib⁹.

Ille mihi succensuit sine causa.

¹ Majorib⁹ here means ancestors: those who have gone before us.

² See note 3, on the preceding page. This is the subjunctive in the sense of the imperative. Use, therefore, the sign *let*.

³ Socrates was a celebrated Grecian philosopher, and was unjustly put to death by the Athenians.

Multi Romanōrum Catilinæ incep̄tis favēbant.
Helōtes¹ Spartānis famulāti sunt.
Dii hominib⁹ succensuērunt. Rura mihi placent.
Misēris succurrēre disce.

English Examples.

No man can serve virtue and Voluptas simul et virtus nemo pleasure at the same time. servio possum.

I do not envy the fortune of Non ullus fortūna invideo. any one.

The shades hurt the corn. Umbrā fruges noceo.
He displeased me the least. Ego minime ille displiceo.

Whoever spares the bad Ille bonus noceo qui malus hurts the good. parco.

Confide in virtue, but dis- Confido virtus, sed diffido trust vice. vitium.

A good boy will obey his pa- Bonus puer is parens pareo. rents.

It is the part of a master to Est magister is servus impēro, command his servant, but sed servus magister servio. of a servant to obey his master.

3. Verbs governing the Accusative.

RULE XVIII. An active Verb, or a Verb signifying actively, governs the accusative; as,

Ama Deūm,
love God.

¹ The Helots were a people whom the Spartans held in slavery, and treated with great cruelty.

Latin Examples.

Beneficia parant amīcos.	Deus mundum creāvit.
Romūlus Romam fundāvit.	Virtus largītur tranquilitātem.
Cæsar Pompeium vicit.	Labor omnia vincit.
Omnes amant aurum.	Honor artes alit.
Scipio delēvit Carthaginem.	
Sol diem,¹ sed luna noctem regit.	
Mors subīta Achillem forteū extinxit.	
Doctrīna vitam suāvem effīcit.	
Tuām diligentiam omnes admirantur.	
Romāni omnes gentes vicērunt.	

English Examples.

Alexander ² vanquished Da-	Alexander Dariūs vincē-
rius.	rius.
Hannibal ³ conquered Italy.	Hannibal Italia vincē.
Fortune favours the brave.	Audax fortūna juvē.
One death awaits all men.	Unus mors omnis manet.
Egypt produces crocodiles.	Ægyptus crocodilius gignō.
A wise son maketh a glad father.	Filius sapiens lāetus pater fa-
	cio.
All nations acknowledge a God.	Omnis natio Deus agnosco.
Despise pleasures.	Voluptas contemno.
The Egyptians worship ani-	Ægyptius animal cole.
mals.	
A good boy loves his book.	Bonus puer is liber amo.
Ninus founded the Assyrian empire.	Ninus imperium Assyrīus fundo.

¹ Regit is here understood to govern diem.² Alexander was a renowned Grecian general.³ Hannibal was the great Carthaginian general who led his victorious armies near the very gates of Rome.

Cyrus founded the Persian Cyrus imperium Persicus fun-
empire. da.

Romulus founded the Ro- Romulus Romānus imperium
man empire. fundo.

RULE XIX. *Recordor, memini, reminiscor,*
and *obliviscor*, govern the accusative or geni-
tive; as,

*Recordor lectiōnis or lectiōnem,
I remember the lesson.*

Latin Examples.

Vir bonus omnium injuriārum obliviscerētur.

Habes ducem sui oblītum.

Recordor tua consilia et benevolentiam.

Memīni tuæ constantiæ.

Reminiscor vetēris incommōdi Romanōrum.

Cæsar solet nihil oblivisci, nisi injurias.

1 3 8 4 5 9 7 6
Ut verba parentis, et vocem Anchīsæ magni vultumque
2 recordor.

English Examples.

Remember that time. Reminiscor ille tempus.

I have not forgotten to give Non obliviouscor is (dat.) epis-
to him the letters. tola dō.

I recollect his countenance. Reminiscor is vultus.

I remember your past kind- Memīni tuus præteritus bene-
nesses, and am grateful. ficiūm (plur.) et gratus sum.

I remember, nor shall I ever Memīni, nec ille nox oblis-
forget that night. cor.

God himself commands you Tu (acc.) memīni (perf. inf.)
to remember death. mors, Deus ipse jubeo.

4. Verbs governing the Ablative.

RULE XX. Verbs of *plenty* and *scarceness* for the most part govern the ablative; as,

Abundat divitiis, <i>he abounds in riches.</i>	Caret omni culpā, <i>he is free from all fault.</i>
---	--

Latin Examples.

Sicilia affluit frumento.	Pomis exubērat annus.
Urbs peste caret.	Conilio non eges.
Majōres nostri neque consiliī neque audaciæ unquam egūere.	
Non tam artis indīgent, ¹ quām labōris.	
Hoc bellum indīget celeritātis.	

English Examples.

Many bad men ² abound in gold and silver.	Multus malus aurum et argentum abundo.
He who ³ is destitute of virtue, wants all things.	Qui virtus careo, omnis (<i>gen.</i>) indigeo.
The time does not need such aid.	Tempus talis auxilium non egeo.
You shall not want my prayers.	Meus preciis non egeo.
One wants a bridle, another ⁴ a spur.	Alter frēnum, alter calcar egeo.
Show that death is free from all evil.	Ostendo mors (<i>acc.</i>) omnis malum careo (<i>inf.</i>)

¹ *Indigeo* frequently governs the genitive.

² *Bad men*, to be rendered by *mali*, having *homines* understood.

³ *He who*, to be rendered by *qui*, with *ille* understood.

⁴ *One—another*, *alter—alter*.

Sylla filled the city of Rome Sylla Roma sanguis et cædes
with blood and slaughter. impleo.

Go out of the city, Catiline, Egredior ex urbs, Catilina, et
and free the common- libero respublica metus.
wealth from fear.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

RULE XXVIII. When a Verb in the active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case;¹ as,

By the Active Verb.

Accusat me furti, <i>he accuses me of theft.</i>	Docet me grammaticam, <i>he teaches me grammar.</i>
Compāro Virgilium Homēro, <i>I compare Virgil to Homer.</i>	Virgilius comparātur Homēro. <i>Virgil is compared to Homer.</i>

By the Passive Verb.

Accūsor furti, <i>I am accused of theft.</i>	Doceor grammaticam, <i>I am taught grammar.</i>
Virgilius comparātur Homēro. <i>Virgil is compared to Homer.</i>	

Latin Examples.

- | | |
|--------------------|--|
| <i>By Rule 23.</i> | Damnātus est ambītus. Milo damnātus est
homicidii. |
| | Absolūtus est majestātis. Monētur ejus
officii. |
| <i>By Rule 24.</i> | Existimātus magni. Aurum habētus maximi. |
| | Res nunciātus hostībus. Parva ² conferuntur
magnis. Mors recte comparātus somno. |
| <i>By Rule 25.</i> | Puella nobis eripītus. Cicēro comparātus
Demosthēni. |

¹ The *accusative* after an *active* verb, always becomes its *nominative*, when the verb is changed to the *passive* form; while the other case is retained.

² *Parva*, negotia understood, *small things*.

By Rule 26. { Is regātus est ejus sententiam. Johannes
docētur grammaticam.

By Rule 27. { Navis auro onerātur. Solvitur catēnis.
Opprimitur ære aliēno.¹ Privātus est ejus vitā.

English Examples.

He was accused of this crime, Accūso hic crimen, sed judex
but acquitted by the votes absolvō sententia.
of his judges.

Virtue is justly esteemed of Virtus justè magnus (*super.*)
the greatest value. æstimo.

Let not money be compared Divitiæ non fama compāro.
to reputation. (pres. sub. pass.)

The youth is taught Greek. Puer Græcus litéræ doceo.

Cethēgus, having been con- Cethēgus, proditio² condem-
demned of treason, was no, is vita privo.
deprived of his life.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

RULE XXIX. An Impersonal Verb governs
the dative; as,

Expēdit reipublīcæ,
it is profitable for the state.

Latin Examples.

Licet nemini peccāre.³ Accidit mihi præter⁴ opiniōnem.

¹ *Æs* originally meant *copper*, and therefore used for *money*: hence *æs aliēnum*, which literally means, *another man's copper*, means also *debt*; as when one man is in debt to another, he has *another man's money*.

² To be put in the genitive, by Rule 23d.

³ The infinitive is governed by *licet*, by Rule 30th.

⁴ See Prepositions, page 99.

Conducit saluti vivere e natura, et nobis expedit ita vivere.

2 3 1 6 5 4

Omnibus bonis expedit salvam esse rempublicam.¹

Libet mihi expatiari.

Non libet mihi deplorare vitam.

Præstat philosophis tacere, quam loqui.

English Examples.

It is evident to me that God². Constat ego Deus mundus governs the world. berno.

It was manifest to all that Omnis patet is imperium peto. he aimed at the sovereignty.

It is better to die than to Præstat morior quam in servile in slavery. vītus vivo.

It appears to me that he is a Videtur ego is malus sum, bad man. (inf.)

THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE INFINITIVE.

RULE XXX. One Verb governs another in the infinitive; as,

Cupio discere,
I desire to learn.

¹ *Rempublicam*—the accusative before the infinitive *esse*, by Rule 4.

² *That God*—Deum—the accusative before the infinitive of the verb.

Latin Examples.

Non possum¹ dormire. Omnes volunt vivere beatè.
 Urbes non possunt nec aedificari nec frequentari sine cætu
 hominum.

Potes dicere nihil verum.

3 4 2 1

Omne negotium effugere cupivit.

1 4 5 6 3 2

Jam nihil de republica cogitare statui.

1 2 5 6 4 3

Romæ² elephantes per funes incedere docebantur.

Nemo potest easse beatus sine virtute.

Malum librum laudare non possum.

3 4 2 1

Illecbras voluptatis vitare debemus.

1 4 5 3 6 2

Non omnes homines amare pariter possumus.

English Examples.

Learn to live, and learn to Disco vivo, et disco morior.
 die.

I love to study, because I Amo studeo, quia volo disco.
 wish to learn.

Who is able to know all Qui omnis nosco possum.
 things?

¹ Possum is an irregular verb, and is thus varied in the indicative mode, present tense.

Singular. 1. Possum,

I can, or am able,

2. Potes,

Thou canst, or art able,

3. Potest,

He can, or is able;

Plural. 1. Possūmus,

We can, or are able,

2. Potestis,

You can, or are able,

3. Possunt,

They can, or are able.

² Romæ, at Rome, the genitive of place, where; see Rule 47th.

- Do you love to walk? Amo tu ambūlo?
- Good men hate to sin. Bonus odi peccō.
- Learn to bear well a great fortune. Disco bene fero magnus fortūna.
- Thespis is said to have invented Tragedy. Thespis dico Tragēdia inventiō.
- Nothing can imitate the skill of nature. Nihil possum natūra solertia imitor.
- Remember to preserve an equal mind¹ in difficult circumstances. Memīni in res adversus aequalē nimītas conservo.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

RULE XXXI. Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, govern the case of their own verbs;² as,

Amans virtūtem,
loving virtue.

Latin Examples.

- 2 4 3 1
- Regni rerumque oblīti.
- Legāti venērunt questum³ injurias, et ex fœdēre res repetītum.
- Nauta, tenens gubernacūlum, navim regit.

¹ An equal mind, to be rendered by the accusative of *aequanimitas*, equanimity.

² That is, if the verb govern the *accusative*, the participle, gerund, or supine derived from it, governs the *accusative*; if the verb govern the *dative*, the participle governs the *dative*; and so on.

³ *Questum* comes from *queror*.

⁴ *Res*, here means *property*; for the meaning of *ex* see page 100, second definition.

Mors est anteponenda¹ dedecōri.

Julius Cæsar functus² consulātu, Galliam provinciam sorte obtinuit.

Ille carens³ fraude, ab omnībus amātus est.

Consilium Lacedæmonem occupandi cepērunt.

Antonius vestem Cæsāris sanguinolentam ostentans, popūlum adversus conjurātos ~~inflamāvit~~.

English Examples.

Stretching both his hands to- Tendq; ~~dūplex~~ manus ad cœ-
wards heaven. lum,

We sent to inquire⁴ of his Mitto quæro yaletūdī. (acc.)
health.

An army pursuing the ene- Exercitus hosti^s sequor, cum
my, fights with darts. sagitta pugno.

Admonishing me of my duty, Ego officium admoneo, abeo.
he departed.

Loaded with chains he was Catena onero, (perf. part.) in
cast into prison. carcer jacto.

By using deceit he was des- Fraus utor, (ger. abl.) con-
pised.

Nor have I any hope of see- Non ego (dat.) ullus spes vi-
ing my ancient country, deo (ger. gen.) patria anti-
nor my pleasing children, quus, nec dulcis natus, ex-
and my much beloved sire. optatusque parens.

¹ See Rules 25 and 28.

² See Rule 21st.

³ See Rule 20th.

⁴ Let *to inquire* be translated by the supine.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF GERUNDS.

RULE XXXII. Gerunds are construed like substantive nouns; as,

Studendum est mihi,
studying is to me; or, I must study.

Tempus studendi, Aptus studendo,
time of study. fit for studying.

Observation First. The Gerund in *D.U.M.*, of the nominative case, with the verb *est*, governs the dative.¹

Latin Examples.

Etiam post malam messem serendum est.

Omnibus moriendum est.

Semper nobis pugnandum est contra cupidittes.

Nobis orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano.

Vivendum est mihi recte.

3 1 2 4 7 8 6 5

Iis vigilandum est, qui gubernaculum patriae sibi depositum.
Videndum est igitur, ut ea liberalitate utamur, quae proposit
amicis, et noceat nemini.

English Examples.

I must govern my tongue. Lingua (*dat.*) modero sum
ego.

We must deliberate. Ego (*dat. plur.*) delibero sum.

We must take care also lest Caveo sum etiam, ne poena
the punishment be greater magnus quam culpa sum.
than the crime. (*sub. pr.*)

¹ This gerund always implies *obligation* or *necessity*, and very often the dative is understood; as, *serendum est*, it *must be sowed*, that is, *nobis, by us*, or, *omnibus, by all*.

We should take care that the *Efficio sum, ut appetitus* —
appetites be obedient to *tio¹* obedio.
reason.

Observation Second. The gerund in *DI*, of the genitive case, is governed by substantives or adjectives.

Latin Examples.

4 3 1 2

Plurimæ sunt illecēbræ peccandi.
Artem scribendi Phœnices invenērunt.
Artem acu pingendi² Phryges invenērunt.
Honestissima est contentio beneficiis beneficia vincendi.
Cæsar equitandi³ peritissimus erat.

English Examples.

The lust of power. **Domino cupido.**
We should check⁴ that license of scandalizing. **Refūto iste maledīco licentia.**
Milo had no power of staying. **Milo (dat.) maneo nullus sum
ing. facultas.**

Observation Third. The gerund in *DO*, of the dative case, is governed by adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness.

Latin Examples.

**Charta est utilis scribendo.
Hic exercitus aptus est gerendo bellum.
Cæsar impérat omnes naves aptas pugnanda**

¹ See Rule 17, Obs. 5th.

² Pingendi acu, of painting with the needle, that is, of working figures upon cloth.

⁸ For the government of *equitandi* by *peritissimum*, see Rule 10th.

* We should check, refute or remove.

English Examples.

Seed is useful for sowing. Semen utilis sum sero.

He is not fit for commanding the army. Ille non sum aptus exercitus
 (dat.) impēro.

This water is not fit for drinking. Hic aqua non sum aptus bibo.

Observation Fourth. The gerund in *DUM*, of the accusative case, is governed by the prepositions *ad* or *inter*.

Latin Examples.

Promptus ad audiendum. Attentus inter docendum.

2 3 4 1 7 8 6
 Catōnis erga fratrem benevolentia ad imitandum propo-
 5
 nenda est.

Tempus anni ad gerendum bellum deficit.

Arbitratus tempus esse aliēnum ad committendum prōrium,
 continuit se suo loco.

English Examples.

He is artful in persuading. Ille astūtus ad persuadeo.

The short time of our existence is long enough to live well. Brevis tempus ætas satis sum
 ence is longus ad benè vivo.

Observation Fifth. The gerund in *DO*, of the ablative case, is governed by the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *x*, or *in*; or if there be no preposition, it is governed as the ablative of cause, manner, or instrument. See Rule 46.

Latin Examples.

Pœna a peccando absterret. Defessus sum ambulando.

1 4 2 5 3

Simiæ catulos sæpe complectendo necant.

Amicus semper amicum juvabit consolando.

Plurimi, in suadendo, audaces; sed in ipso periculo timidi sunt.

English Examples.

Idle persons are soon discou- Ignavus a disco cito deterreo.
raged from learning.

It is not my design to spend Non meus consilium sum ego
my life in cultivating land vitam ager colo aut venor.
or in hunting.

The mind of man is nourish- Homo mens disco alo et co-
ed by learning and think- gito.
ing.

Gerunds turned into Participles in dus.

RULE XXXIII. Gerunds governing the accusative, are elegantly turned into participles in *dus*, which, like adjectives, agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case; as,

By the Gerund.

1 3 4 2

Petendum est mihi pacem,
seeking is to me peace.

Tempus petendi pacem,
time of seeking peace.

By the Participle.

Pax est petenda mihi,
peace is to be sought by me.

Tempus pacis petendæ,
time of peace to be sought.

Latin Examples.

Cæsar morātur in his locis causā¹ parandārum navium.
 Non habēbat facultātem² gerendi belli.
 Omnes civitātes pecuniam dededērunt ad classes ædificandas, exercitusque comparandos.
 Imperātor existimābat octoginta naves esse satis ad transportandas duas légiones

1	3	4	6	7	5	8
Barbāri suis, ³ quanta prædæ faciendæ facultas ⁴ darētur,						
9	11	12	10	2		
si Romānos castris expulissent demonstravērunt.						(

English Examples.

You, now, soldiers, have an Nunc, milia, opportunitas ha-
 opportunity of trying your beo virtus probo.
 courage.⁵

There was a design of de- Consilium sum urbs deleo, et
 stroying the city, and of civis interficio.
 murdering the citizens.

That boy is fit for sustaining Hic puer aptus sum labor to-
 labour. lero.

All the cities of Greece gave Omnis civitas Græcia, do pe-
 money for building a cunia ad classis ædifico.
 fleet.

¹ Causā is put in the ablative, by Rule 46th, which see.

² Facultātem here signifies *the means, the resources.*

³ Suis agrees with *hominibus* understood.

⁴ Facultas, in this sentence, means, *opportunity.*

⁵ Of trying your courage, to be rendered by the genitive of probanda virtus.

⁶ For building, ad ædificandam.

Some men use more care in Quidam magnus studium utor
procuring horses than in in equus paro, quam in
choosing their friends. amicus seligo.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF SUPINES.

1. *The Supine in um.*

RULE XXXIV. The Supine in *um* is put after a verb of motion; as,

Abiit **deambulatum,**
he hath gone to walk.

Latin Examples.

Venimus huc quæsitum oracula.

3 4 2 1
Me ultro accusatum advenit.

Scitatum óracula Phœbi mittimus.

Imperātor duxit cohortes p̄s̄dātūm.

Legatos ad Cæsarem mittunt, rogatum auxilium.

Nunc venis iurisum dominum?

Venit orātum opem.

Vos ultum injurias hortor.

English Examples.

He went to fish. Abeo pisco.

He came to ask pardon of Venio ora venia Cæsar.

Caesar.¹

The army was sent to lay Exercitus mitto Romānus ager
waste the Roman territory. vasto.

¹ *Of Caesar*, should be rendered by the accusative, according to Rule 26th.

**They came to my house to Venio ad meus domus ego sa-
salute me.** Nuto.

**They go to destroy all good Omnis bonus perdo eo.
men.**

2. The Supine in u.

RULE XXXV. The Supine in *u* is put after an adjective noun; as,

Facile dictu,
easy to tell, or to be told.

Latin Examples.

Prodigium est mirabile visu.

Ista lepida sunt memorata.

Horatius ferè solus lectu dignus.¹

Nihil² dictu fœdum, visuque, hæc limina tangat, intra
quæ est puer.

Difficilis res est inventu verus amīcus.

Sed incredibile est, quantum civitas brevi crevit.

English Examples.

The thing is horrible to relate. Res horrendus refero.

It is wonderful to tell how Mirabilis sum dico quantum
much he accomplished by diligentia (*abl.*) facio.
his diligence.

¹ *Est* is to be supplied.

² *Nihil* is the nominative to *langat*, which is in the subjunctive mode, present tense, and is used here, as is often the case, for the imperative mode; as, *puer legat*, let the boy read, *for*, *puer legito*: therefore in construing *nihil*, say, *let nothing*.

It is easy to tell that idle- *Facilis, dico ignavia miseria*
ness¹ will produce misery. *gigno.*

It is difficult to find a true friend. *Dificilis sum invenio amicu-*
verum.

This is lawful to be spoken. Hic fas sum dico.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF INDECLINABLE WORDS.

1. THE CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS.

RULE XXXVI. Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives, and other adverbs; as,

Benè scribit, Fortiter pugnans.

well he writes. bravely fighting.

Latin Examples.

1 3 2 7 6 5 4
Xantippe, Socratis uxor, morosa admōdūm fuisse fertur.

Ut sœpe summa ingenia in occulto² latent.

4 7 8 6 1 5 2
Diutiūs nostrōrum milītum impētum hostes ferre non po-
 3 9 11 10
tuērunt, ac terga vertērunt.

Natio omnis Gallorum admōdūm dedita est religionib⁹.

Biduo post, Ariovistus legatos ad Cæsarem mittit.

English Examples.

Cimon quickly came to the greatest eminence. Cimon celeriter ad principatum pervenio.

He died a few days after. Ille pauci post dies (*abl. plur.*) morior.

I hoped well, but it happen- Spero bene, sed evēnit multo
ed much otherwise. alīter.

¹ That idleness; accusative before the future infinitive.

² *Occulto* is here used for a noun, *in secret*; properly speaking, it agrees with *loco* understood; in *occulto loco*, *in a secret place*.

IV. THE GOVERNMENT OF ADVERBS.

RULE XXXVII. Some Adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive; as,
Pridiē ejus diēi, Ubiq̄e gentium,
the day before that day. in every part of nations, or every where.

Latin Examples.

Potentiæ gloriæque abundè adeptus est.
 Te interea loci¹ cognōvi.
Ejus abstinentiæ hoc erit satis testimonii.
Contentio eō yecordiæ processit, ut studiis civilibus finem faceret.
Credo inesse in arcā largiter auri et argenti.
Postridie ejus diei mane, milites in expeditiōnem misit.

English Examples.

He came to such a pitch² of Venio eō arrogantia, ut is insolence, that I com- (dat.) impēro ego desero. manded him to leave me.
 A great abundance³ of wealth Affātim divitiæ non ego opus is not necessary for us. sum.
 We have said words enough,⁴ Dico satis verbum. (enough of words.)
 He has enough talk, but lit. Habeo satis loquentia, sed pa- ple wisdom. rum sapientia.
 He had eloquence enough. Habeo satis eloquentia.

¹ Interea loci, in the mean time.

² To such a pitch, eō.

³ A great abundance, affātim.

⁴ Enough, satis.

RULE XXXVIII. Some derivative Adverbs govern the case of their primitives; as,

3 2 1

Omnium optīmē loquitur,
of all best he speaks, or, in the English order,
he speaks best of all.

Latin Examples.

~~The nature com~~ Ille naturæ convenienter¹ vivit.

Jugurtha sæpe obviam eundo periculis, in tantam claritudinem brevi pervenerat, ut Romānis vehementer carus Numantinis maximo terrōri² esset.

Proximē urbi Spartæ Eurōtas fluvius delabitur.

Cicero optīmē³ omnium Romanōrum locūtus est.

Castra nostra propiūs urbi movebantur.

English Examples

Miltiades flourished the Miltiades omnis maxime flo- greatest of all. reo.

He staid beyond⁴ expecta- Maneo diutius expectatio- tion.

What does he say agreeably Quid ratio convenienter dico? to reason?

Part of the standards were Partim signum (*gen. plur.*) burnt. uro.

I sent to Athens to meet⁵ Mitto Athenæ (acc.) obviam him. is. (*dat.*)

¹ Convenienter; obviam, in the next sentence; proximē, in the next and propius, in the next but one; all govern the dative by the force of their primitives, under Rule 12th; which see.

² For these two datives see Rule 22d.

³ For the primitive of optīmē see Rule 11th.

⁴ Diutius governs the ablative by Rule 58th.

⁵ To meet, obviam.

All in the mean time run to Omnis interea locus, ego ob-
meet me.
~~via~~ viam concurro.

2. THE CONSTRUCTION OF PREPOSITIONS.

1. *Prepositions governing the Accusative.*

RULE XXXIX. There are thirty-two prepositions which govern the accusative, or have an accusative after them.

[For examples under this rule see pages 98 and 99.]

2. *Prepositions governing the Ablative.*

RULE XL. There are thirteen prepositions which govern the ablative, or have an ablative case after them.

[For examples under this rule see page 100.]

3. *Prepositions governing the Accusative and Ablative.*

RULE XLI. The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative, *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

IN, when it signifies *into*, governs the accusative; when it signifies *in* or *among*, it governs the ablative. [See page 101.]

RULE XLII. A Preposition in composition often governs the same case, as when it stands by itself; as,

Adeāmus scholam,
let us go to school.

Latin Examples.

Urbem¹ magnam accedimus.

Boni puëri scholam adire delectant, et scholâ compositè exeunt.

Mali puëri scholâ expelluntor.

Catilina, Cicerone accusatus, urbe evasit.

Igitur Metellus cuncta mœnia² exercitu circumvenit.

Aliqui vitam silentio transeunt, veluti pecora.

At Jugurtha, magnis itineribus, Metellum antevenerit.

English Examples.

They thrust the ships from Detrudo navis scopulus.
the rock.

Cæsar led³ all his cavalry Cæsar omnis equitatus pons over the bridge. traduco.

I am absent both from my Absum et meus domus et fo-
house and the forum. rum.

He addressed me in these Hic verbum (abl. plur.) ego words. allöquor.

¹ Urbem is governed by *ad* in the composition of *accedimus*. See note 3, page 129.

² This 42d Rule generally takes place when the preposition can be separated from its verb. So in this line—venit exercitu circum cuncta mœnia; where *circum* is separated from *venit*.

³ In English the preposition is generally separated from its verb, and put after it. In this sentence, to follow the Latin manner of speaking, it would be, *Cæsar overled the bridge all his cavalry.*

The fleet is drawn around¹ Classis arx circumveho.
the citadel.

Being expelled from his coun- Patria expulsus Sicilia (acc.)
try he went to Sicily. eo.

By this way he drew over his Hic² copia tradūco, et in Ita-
troops, and came into Italy. lia (acc.) pervenio.

3. THE CONSTRUCTION OF INTERJECTIONS.

RULE XLIII. The Interjections, *O*, *heu*, and *proh*, are construed with the nominative, accusative, or vocative; as,

1	3	2
O	vir	bonus!
		<i>O good man!</i>

Latin Examples.

O me perditum! O faciem pulchram!

O meam calamitosam senectutem!

Heu me miserum! quum tuum animum spectavi.

Proh deum atque hominum fidem!

Heu, miserande puer!

English Examples.

What an abandoned and im- O! scelestus atque audax ho-
pudent man. mo! (acc.)

O my country! O Ilium! O patria! (voc.) O Ilium.

O the detestable meanness O fecunditas (acc.) homo flagiti-
of the man. osus.

O sacred Jove! what great- Prô sanctus Jupiter (voc.)
er action was ever per- quis magnus res unquam
formed? gero.

¹ Is drawn around, circumvehitur.

² Put this in the abl. sing. fem. to agree with via understood.

RULE XLIV. *Hei* and *væ* govern the dative; as,

Hei mihi!	Væ vobis!
<i>ah me!</i>	<i>woe to you.</i>

Latin Examples.

Hei mihi! non possum hoc sine lacrymis commemorare.

Hei mihi, qualis erat!¹ quantum mutatus ab illo Hectore;
qui rediit exuvias² indutus Achillis!

Væ misero mihi!

English Examples.

Alas! whither am I hurried? Hei ego! quod rapio?

Woe to me! my son has fallen! Væ ego! meus filius in pugna
en in battle. occumbo.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF CIRCUMSTANCES.

Q. How many circumstances are there in Latin, expressed in different cases?

A. Five: 1. The *Price of thing*. 2. The *Cause, Manner, and Instrument*. 3. *Place*. 4. *Measure and Distance*. 5. *Time*.

1. PRICE.

RULE XLV. The price of a thing is put in the ablative; as,

Emi librum duōbus assib⁹,
I bought a book for two shillings.

¹ Qualis erat! what was he! that is, how he looked! This refers to Hector, the Trojan general, who was killed by Achilles, and whose body was dragged around the walls of Troy.

² Exuvias is governed by the preposition *secundum* understood. It refers to the armour of Achilles which Patroclus, another Grecian general, had worn, whom Hector had killed, and in whose armour he had dressed himself, before he himself was killed by Achilles.

Latin Examples.

Isocr̄ates orātor unam oratiōnem viginti talentis vendīdit.
 Locāvit suam domum centum aureis.
 Multōrum sanguīne ac vulnerībus ea Pœnis victoria stetit.¹
 Magno pretio ubique virtus aestimātur.
 Emi librum duobus assibus.
 Voluptas empta dolere nocet.
 Plurimi auro veneunt honores.

English Examples.

This man sold his country Hic aurum patria vendo.
 for gold.

Demosthenes taught for a Demosthēnes talentum doceo.
 talent.

What is not necessary, is Quis non sum necessarius,
 dear at a penny. carus sum denarius.

He sold his house for a large Vendo is domum grandis pe-
 sum of money. cunia.

Life is not to be bought at Vita non sum emo² omnis
 every price. pretium.

2. MANNER AND CAUSE.

RULE XLVI. The cause, manner, and instrument are put in the ablative; as,

Palleo metu,	Fecit suo more,
<i>I am pale for fear.</i>	<i>he did it in his own way.</i>

¹ Stetit Pœnis, literally, *stood to the Carthaginians*; as we say of any thing, *it stands us in so much, when it costs us so much.*

² Use the future pass. part. fem.

Latin Examples.

Percussit eum gladio.

Neptūnus tridente suo terram percussit.

Eurōpa ab Afrīca sejungītur freto Gaditāno.

1 4 3 2 6 5

Plato, discendi cupiditate ductus, *Ægyptum*¹ peragravit.

Feræ domantur fame atque verberibus.

Crocodilus pelle durissima contra omnes ictus munitur.

Elephanti spirant, bibunt, odorantur proboscide.

Dentes usu atteruntur, sed igne non crémantur.

Multi morbi curantur abstinentiâ et quiete.

Deus colitur non corporibus opīmis taurorum

non auro, non argento, sed voluntate piâ et rectâ.

Laboribus, consiliis, periculisque Ciceronis, Roma

vāta est.

English Examples.

Let us always worship God Semper Deus colo (*pres. sub.*)
with a pure mind. purus animus.

The world was created by **Mundus Deus creo.**
God.

Demosthenes overcame the **Demosthēnes** **natura** **impedi-**
impediments **of** **nature** **by** **mentum** **vincu,** **industria**
industry **and** **diligence.** **atque** **diligentia.**

The sun shines by his own Sol suus lux luceo; luna et
light; the moon and the planēta sol lumen luceo.
planets shine by the light
of the sun.

Rome was founded by Rom. Roma Romulus fundo.
ulus.

¹ For the government of Egypt see Rule 42d.

The manners of men are Mos homo adversitas sequè ac
changed by adversity as prosperitas muto.
well as by prosperity.

We are all drawn by a desire¹ Nos omnis traho laus studium.
of praise.

Pompey was conquered by Pompeius Cæsar vincit.
Cæsar.

3. PLACE.

The circumstances of place may be reduced to four particulars. 1. The place *where*, or *in which*. 2. The place *whither*, or *to which*. 3. The place *whence*, or *from which*. 4. The place *by*, or *through which*.

AT or IN a place is put in the genitive; unless the noun be of the third declension, or of the plural number, and then it is expressed in the ablative.

TO a place is put in the accusative; FROM or BY a place in the ablative.

1. *The place WHERE.*

RULE XLVII. When the place *where*, or *in which*, is spoken of, the name of a town is put in the genitive; as,

Vixit Romæ,
he lived at Rome.

Latin Examples.

Quid Romæ faciam? Philippus Neapoli est.

Templum Dianæ fuit Ephësi.

Marcus Antonius primus Romæ leōnes ad currum junxit.

¹ Desire, *studium.*

Pompeius Thessaliam a Cæsare fugatus est.

1 4 6 3 5 2

Cato sibi Uticæ mortem ferro consivit.

Antonius Actii victus est ab Augusto navali pugnâ clarâ et illustri.

Sappho Lesbi natus est.

Ægypti multa mira sunt et artis et natûræ opéra: inter ea quæ manibus hominum facta sunt pyramides.

English Examples.

Cicero was born at Arpinum. Cicero Arpīnum nascor.

Dionysius taught children at Dionysius Corinthus liberi do-
Corinth. ceo.

At Sparta old age was most Sparta senectus sum honorā-
honoured. tus. (*super.*)

At Rome were exhibited the Ludus truculentus Roma os-
most barbarous sports. tendo.

Hannibal conquered the Ro- Hannibal Cannæ exercitus
man army at Cannæ. Romānus vincō.

There is a temple of Neptune Fanum Neptūnus sum Tænā-
at Tænarus, which the rus, qui viōlo nefas puto
Greek accounts a most Græcus.
heinous crime to pollute.

2. *The place Whither.*

RULE XLVIII. When the place *whither*, or *to which*, is spoken of, the name of a town is put in the accusative; as,

Venis, Romam,
he came to Rome.

Latin Examples.

Deinde Cæsar Pharsalum petiit, ubi Pompeium Pharsalico prælio fudit.

Misérunt Delphos consultum quid facèrent de rebus suis.
Pompeius victus Pharsaliæ, Alexandriam contendit.

Quum Scipio a Cæsare victus est, Cato Uticam Africæ urbem petivit.

Cicero Athenæ petivit, ut Antiöchum philosophum audiret:
indè, eloquentiæ gratiâ, Rhodum se contulit, ubi Molone,¹ rhetore tum disertissimo, magistro usus est.

Alcibiades clam se a custodibus subduxit, et inde primum Elidem, deinde Thebas venit.

English Examples.

Regulus returned to Carthage.

If I dared, I would go to Athens.

I wish to go to Alexandria.

After the battle of Cannæ Post Cannæ pugna, Hannibal Hannibal went to Capua.

He led his army to Megara, Is exercitus duco Megara, et and immediately after to Corinth.

When Themistocles saw that he was not safe enough at Argos, he removed to Corcyra.

¹ Governed by *utrus est*: see Rule 21st.

3. *The place whence.*

RULE XLIX. When the place *whence*, or *from which*, or the place *by* or *through which*, is spoken of, the name of a town is put in the ablative; as,

Discessit Corinthon,
he departed from Corinth.

Latin Examples.

Pompeius, Syriā¹ decēdens, quum Rhodūm venisset, nobilissimum philosōphum Posidonium cupiit audire.

Ænēas Trojā aufūgit, et in Italiam venit.

Cæsar, Galliā¹ remeans, contra senātūs cōsultum, Romam cum exercitu petiit.

Cyrus ejus exercitū Sardę Babylōnem duxit: Cunaxæ victus et occīsus est.

English Examples.

Themistocles was banished Themistocles Athēnæ expello.
from Athens.

Dionysius sent for Plato from Dionysius Plato Athēnæ ar-Athens. cesso.

Clodius suddenly departed Clodius subito Roma discēdo,
from Rome, that he might ut insidiæ Milo paro.
prepare an ambush for
Milo.

I received many letters from Multus epistola Roma accipio.
Rome.

¹ The preposition, though generally added to names of countries, is sometimes omitted.

Domus and Rus.

RULE L. *Domus* and *rus* are construed the same way as names of towns; as,

Manet domi, Rediit rure,
he stays at home. *he is returned from the country.*

Latin Examples.

At nobis est demi¹ inopia; foris es alienum.

Nunc vero exsul domo,² atque omnium honestarum rerum
 egens.

Allobroges, priusquam domum³ pergarent, cum Catilina
 societatem confirmavérunt.

Domi industria, foris justum imperium fuit.

English Examples.

I will not go from my father's Non eo donus paternus.
 house.

A messenger came to him Nuntius ad is domus venio.
 from home.

I fear lest my father should Timeo ne meus pater rus re-
 turn from the country. deo.

He came to the house of Venio Pompeius domus pri-
 Pompey early in the morn- mus lux (abl.⁴)
 ing.

He has gone to the country Rus proficiscor reliquus vita
 to pass the rest of his life. ago.

¹ In the genitive, by Rule 47. Repeat this Rule first, then the 47th.

² In the ablative, by Rule 49.

³ In the accusative, by Rule 48.

⁴ See Rule 53.

Good manners prevailed at Bonus mos tunc tempus (*gen.*¹)
that time, at home. domus valeo.

RULE LI. To names of countries, provinces,
and all other places, except towns, the preposi-
tion is commonly added; as,

Natus est in Italiam, Rediit ex Italiam,
he was born in Italy. he returned from Italy.

Latin Examples.

Transiit per Italiam.

Ab Eurōpā petis Asiam; ex Asiā transis in Eurōpam.

Iter in Ciliciam faciam per Cappadociam.

Ex Ephēso huc ad meum sodalem literas misi.

Solon, postquam leges Atheniensibus dedit, in Asiam,
Ægyptumque peregrinatus est: deinde Athēnas rediit.

English Examples.

Cæsar marched to farther Cæsar in Gallia ulterior con-
Gaul. tendo.

I rejoice that you did not go Gandeo tu (*acc.*) non in Brit-
into Britain. tania proficiscor.

Hannibal, having marched Hannibal quum per Italia in-
through Italy, returned to cedo, Carthāgo redeo.
Carthage.

Hannibal sent one army into Hannibal unus exercitus in
Spain, and left another in Hispania mitto, alterque in
Africa. Afrīca relinquo.

¹ See Rule 37.

4. MEASURE AND DISTANCE.

RULE LII. Measure or distance is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative; as,

Murus est decem pedes altus,
the wall is ten feet high.

Latin Examples.

Abest Italia ab Sardinia centum viginti millia passuum.¹

Locus est ab urbe decem millia passuum.

Jam mille passus processeram.

Babylōnis muri fūerunt ducentos cubitōs² alti.

Lavinium distat ab Romā itinēre unūs diēi.³

Muri Athēnis ad Piraeum porrecti sunt tria millia passuum
in longitudine.

English Examples.

I will not go a foot from you. Non discēdo pes a tu.

The Persian gulf is distant Persīcus sinus mare Ruber
from the Red sea one hundred absum centum et quinqua-
dred and fifty miles. ginta mille passus. (*abl.*)

He pitched his camp six Pono castra sex mille passus
miles from the enemy. ab hostis. (*plur.*)

Hannibal was three days Hannibal a Tarentum tres
journey from Tarentum. dies (*gen.*) iter. (*acc.*)

¹ Governed by *millia*, by Rule 11th. A thousand paces made one mile: ten thousand paces were therefore ten miles.

² A cubit was a foot and an half long.

³ The ancients often reckoned distances by days' journeys.

5. TIME.

RULE LIII. Time *when* is put in the *ablative*; time *how long* is put in the *accusative* or *ablative*; as,

Venit tertiā horā,
he came at the third hour.

Mansit paucos dies, Abfuit sex mensib⁹.
he stayed a few days. he was away six months.

Latin Examples.

Antiquissimis temporibus Saturnus in Italiam venisse dicitur.

Postero die, procūl a castris, hostes in collibus constitērunt.
Hiēme ursi in antris dormiunt.

Nemo mortalium omnib⁹ horis sapit.

Anno decimo quarto postquam in Italiam Hannibal venērat, Scipio consul creātus¹ et in Africam missus est.

Eodem die legati, ab hostib⁹ missi ad Cæsarem de pace venērunt.

Nostri milites horas quatuor fortissime pugnavērunt.

Eodem die ab exploratorib⁹ certior factus est hostes sub montem consedisse, millia passuum ab ipsius castris octo.

English Examples.

He came at three o'clock. Venio tertius hora.

Hippocrates, a most celebra- Hippocrates, medicus celēber, ted physician, lived nine- vivo annus undecentum. ty-nine years.

The sun shone out on the Tertius dies sol luceo, third day.

¹ *Est* is here understood to *creātus*.

He had a house for many Multus annus is (*dat.*) domus
years at Rome. sum Roma.

Rome was built in the seven Roma condо septingentesimus
hundred and fifty-third et quinquagesimus tertius
year before Christ. annus ante Christus.

On the next day they re- Postерus dies castra ex is
moved the camp from that locus moveo.
place.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

Q. What is a *Compound Sentence*?

A. A *Compound Sentence* is that which is made up of two or more simple sentences, and which has more than one nominative, and one verb.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF RELATIVES.

RULE LIV. The relative *Qui*, *Quæ*, *Quod*, agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; and is construed through all the cases, as the antecedent would be in its place; as,

Vir	qui,	Fœmina	quæ,	Negotium	quod,
<i>the man who.</i>		<i>the woman who.</i>		<i>the thing which.</i>	

Observation First. If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be the nominative to the verb.

Latin Examples.

6	5	7	8	1	2	4	3
<i>Minor est quam servus dominus, qui servos timet.</i>							
<i>Non omnis ager, qui seritur, fert fruges.</i>							

Beneficium reddit¹ qui ejus² bene memor est.

Amo virum qui pauca loquitur.

Ego sum Miltiades, qui Persas vici.

**Deus, qui noscit corda et cogitationes, puniet scelestos,
qui ejus precepta violant, et remunerabit bonos.**

Cato, qui fait sapiens, amavit patriam.

Illa habet modestiam, quae eat ornatus vitae.

Omnes Romani senatores convenient, qui promiserunt.

English Examples.

God who gives life. **Deus qui de vita...**

We love the man who loves God. **Amo vir qui Deus amo...**

Men, who neglect religion, Ille (*nom. plur.*) qui religio
will be punished hereafter. *negligit, olim puniatur.*

There is a God in the world, Deus sum in mundo, qui
who governs all things. *omnis gubernatio.*

He is braver who conquers himself, than he who con- *quam qui urbs munitus ex-*
quers the strongest city. *pugnat.*

There are four parts of the Sum mundus quatuor pars,
world, which are, Europe, *qui sum Eurōpa,* Asia,
Asia, Africa, and America. *Afrīca, et Amerīca.*

The hour which is past can- *Hora qui prætereo (perf.) non*
not return. *redeo possum.*

Observation Second. But when a nominative does come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be in that case, which the verb, or noun following, or the preposition going before, usually governs.

¹ *Ille* is understood, to which *qui* relates.

² For the government of *ejus* by *memor*, see Rule 10th.

Latin Examples.

Est Deus quem colimus, cui nullus est similis, cuius¹ munere vivimus, a quo facta sunt omnia.

Urbs, quam Romulus condidit, Roma vocata est.

Est bonus puer quem gloria excitat, et laus delectat.

Sulla mox Roman ingressus est, quam cede² et sanguine civium replavit.

Cæsar his de causis, quas commemoravi, Rhenum transisse decrevit.

Avaritia pecuniae studium habet, quam nemo sapiens concupivit.

Felices sunt, quorum³ corda pura sunt.

Legati ab iis venerunt, quorum oratio grata fuit.

Est Deus, cuius⁴ numen adorarēmus, cui⁵ parerēmus, et a quo conservamur.

Commōda, quibus utimur, lux qua fruimur, spiritus quem ducimus, dantur et impertiuntur nobis a Deo.

English Examples.

The mountains which we see. Mons qui video.

The breath which we draw, Spiritus, qui duco, a Deus comes from Heaven. venio.

The city, which Romulus Urbs qui Romulus condo, vobuilt, was called Rome. co Roma.

¹ Cujus, of whom, to be rendered whose; as, cuius munere, by whose bounty.

² See Rule 27th.

³ Quorum, of whom, to be rendered whose: Thus, quorum corda, whose hearts wherein, is equivalent to in which; whereby, to by which; whereof, to of which; wherewith, to with which, &c.

⁴ Governed by numen, by Rule 6th.

⁵ See Rule 17th, Observation 5th.

Some men hate those things *Alīquis odi is (acc. plur. neut.)*
 which others love. *qui aliis amo.*

The God whom we adore is *Deus, qui colo, bonus et mag-*
 the best and the greatest. *nus sum.*

I see Italy, which your an- *Italia, qui majōres vester vin-*
 cestors conquered. *co, video.*

The arrows which they send *Sagitta, qui emitto, lethālis*
 forth are deadly. *sum.*

THE CONSTRUCTION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

RULE LV. The conjunctions, *et, ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel,* and some others, couple similar cases and modes; as,

*Honōra patrem et matrem,
 honour father and mother.*

Latin Examples.

Gallia posita est inter Pyrenæos montes et Rhenum.

Erant in Pompeio multæ ac magnæ virtutes, ac præcipue admiranda frugalitas.

Nos patriæ fines, et dulcia linquimus arva.

Accipere præstat quam facere injuriam.

Quis nam igitur est liber?

Sapiens, qui sibi imperiōsus; quem neque paupertas, neque mors, neque vincula terrent.

Non census, nec clarum nomen avōrum, sed virtus magnos¹ facit.

**Germāni vetēres non habuērunt urbes mœnibus cinctas,
 aut fossis aggeribusque munitas. }**

¹ *Magnos* agrees with *viro*s understood.

English Examples.

The winds subside, and the clouds disperse. *Concēdo ventus, fugioque nubes.*

Length of time consumes iron and stone. *Vetustas ferrum et lapis exēdo.* (*plur.*)

Virtue is esteemed illustrious and immortal. *Virtus æstimo clarus et immortalis.*

Neither wealth, nor power, nor pleasures, render a man happy. *Nec divitiae, nec potestas, nec voluptas, aliquis beatus facio.*

I did not blame your cause, but your plan. *Non res sed consilium reprehendo.*

He reached land at day-break, and brought over all the ships safe. *Primus lux¹ terra attingo, omnisque incolumis navis perduco.*

RULE LVI. Two or more substantives singular coupled by a conjunction, (as, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, &c.) have an adjective, verb, or relative plural; as,

Petrus et Joannes, qui sunt docti,
Peter and John who are learned.

Latin Examples.

Fames et sitis sunt molestæ.

Demosthēnes et Cicērō oratōres præstantissimi fuērunt.

Rhenus Rhodanusque Eurōpæ amnes sunt maximi.

3	2	1	4	5	6	7
Græciæ civitætes clarissimæ fuērunt Athēnæ atque Lace-dæmon.						

¹ Ablative by Rule 53rd, which see.

Lupus et agnus, siti compulsi, ad rivum eundem **venērai**
 Clarissimi amnes Italiæ sunt Padus et Tibēris.

Menelāus et Paris armāti pugnavērunt propter Helēnam
 divitias.

English Examples.

The master and the scholar Magister et discipūlus stu-
 study. deo.

Homer and Milton were Homērus et Milton cœcu-
 blind. sum.

Alexander and Julius Cæsar Alexander et Julius Cæsa-
 were very great command- sum præstans (*super.*) dux-
 ers.

The husband and the wife Marītus et uxor consentio-
 agree.

My father and my mother Meus pater et mater sum pius.
 are pious.

Riches, power, and honour, Divitiae, potestas, et hon-
 are uncertain. sum incertus.

Habit and reason have made Mos et ratio tu patiens et
 you more patient and gen- placidus facio.
 tle.

RULE LVII. The conjunctions, *ut*, *quo*, *licet*,
ne, *utinam*, *dummōdo*, are for the most part joined
 to the subjunctive mode; as,

Lego *ut* discam, Utinam sapēres,
I read that I may learn. O that you were wise.

Latin Examples.

Tanta est in India ubertas soli, ut sub unâ ficu turmæ
 equitum condantur.

Orandum est¹ ut sit mens sana in corpore sano.

Hic locus est unus, quod perfugiant.

1 2 3 5 8 7 6 4
Dicam equidem, licet arma mihi mortemque minetur.

1 3 4 2
Utinam illum diem videam.

Ingens fuit Romae timor, ne iterum Galli urbem occuparent.
Omnia honesta negligunt, dummodo potentiam consequantur.

Quamobrem placuit ei, ut ad Arioustum legatos mittaret,
qui ab eo postularent, ut aliquem locum medium utrisque colloquio diligaret.

English Examples.

God sent his Son into the world, that the world might be saved.
Deus is Filium in mundus mitto, ut mundus per is through him might be servo.

I will detect the thief, though he threatens arms and death.
Detego furtum, licet arma et mors minor.

I wish² you were wise. Utinam tu sapio.

Love not sleep lest thou come to poverty. Amo non somnus, ne pauper sum.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF COMPARATIVES.

RULE LVIII. The comparative degree governs the ablative, (*when it can be translated by than;*³ as,

Dulcior melle	Præstantior auro,
sweeter than honey.	better than gold.

¹ *Nobis* is understood.

² I wish—utinam.

³ That is, when quam, *than*, is omitted after a comparative, the substantive following is put in the ablative.

Latin Examples.

Pax optabilior est bello. Cicero fuit honestior Cæsare.
 Nihil est clementia divinius. Aurum gravius est argento.
 Luna terræ proprietor est sole. Virtus opibus melior.
 Adamas durior est ferro, ferrum durius ceteris metallis.
 Inter urbes Siciliæ nulla fuit illustrior Syracusis.
 Grecia enim nulla regio magnorum ingeniorum¹ fuit fera-
 cior.

English Examples.

Solon was wiser than Croesus- Solon sapiens sum Croesus.
 sus.
 Ice is colder than marble. Glacies sum frigidus marmor.
 What is more desirable than Wisdom? Quis sum optabilis sapientia?
 Nothing is more commendable than mildness and clemency. Nihil sum laudabilis lenitas
 et clementia.
 Nothing is more pleasant to the mind than the light of truth. Nihil animus jucundus sum
 veritas lux.
 The eloquence of Xenophon was sweeter than honey. Xenophon eloquentia dulcis
 sum mel.
 Silver is of less value than gold; gold, than the virtues. Argentum est minor² aurum;
 aurum, virtus. (abl. plur.)

¹ Governed by *fierior* by Rule 14th, which see.

² Genitive. See Rule 45th. To that Rule are excepted these genitives, *tanti*, *quanti*, *pluris*, and *minoris*.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

RULE LIX. A Substantive and a Participle are put in the ablative, when their case depends on no other word; as,

Sole oriente, tenēbræ fugiunt,
the sun rising, } darkness flies away.
 or while the sun riseth, }

Opere peracto, ludēmus,
our work being finished, } let us play.
 or when our work is finished, }

Latin Examples.

Xenophon philosōphus, morte filii audīta, vultu nihil¹ immutāto dixit: "Sciēbam me mortālem² genuisse."

Etiam sanāto vulnēre, cicātrix manet.

Me duce, tutus eris.

Imperante Augusto, natus est Christus; imperante Tiberio, crucifixus.

Philippo, rege Macedonīs, mortuo, filius ejus Perseus rebellavit; ingentibus copiis parātis.

Bellis civilibus confectis, Cæsar dictātor in perpetuum³ creātus est.

Interfecto Cæsare, anno Urbis septingentesimo nono,⁴ bel-

¹ Nihil is governed by secundum, as to, understood.

² Illum is understood, with which mortālem agrees.

³ Tempus is understood: the phrase, in perpetuum, means perpetually, forever.

⁴ The Romans reckoned their dates from the founding of the city, as we do ours, from the birth of Christ. Rome was founded by Romulus 753 before Christ.

la civilia reparāta sunt. Ergo turbātā republicā, Antonius, multis scelerībus commissis, a senātu hostis judicātus est.

His rebus gestis, omni Galliā pacāta, tanta hujus belli ad barbāros opinio perlāta est, ut ab nationībus, quæ trans Rhenum incolērent, mitterentur legāti ad Cæsarem, quæ se obsides datūras, imperāta factūras pollicerentur.

English Examples.

He came to Rome when Ma- Marius consul, Roma venit.
rius was consul: (*Marius
being consul.*)

When nature is our guide, Natūra dux, nullus modus¹
(*nature being our guide,*) erro possum.
we can by no means err.

The cause being removed, Causa amoveo, res ipse au-
the effect is removed. fero.

If benevolence be taken Benevolentia tollo, omnis
away, (*benevolence being
taken away,*) all pleasure
is removed from life.

Laying aside diversion, (*di- Amoveo ludus, serius quæro.
version being laid aside,*) (*sub. pres.*)
let us attend to serious
things.

¹ Ablative, by Rule 46th.

GENERAL VOCABULARY.

CONTRACTIONS IN THE VOCABULARY.

NOUNS.

masc. for masculine gender.	neut. for neuter gender.
fem. for feminine gender.	com. for common gender.

The ending of the genitive case, of course, determines the declension. See page 4.

VERBS.

act. for an active verb.	dep. for a deponent verb.
pass. for a passive verb.	imper. for an impersonal verb.
neut. for a neuter verb.	irreg. for an irregular verb.

The syllable before *re*, of the infinitive mode, of course, determines the conjugation. See page 52.

The adjectives are declined through the nominative; and the genitive case masculine is given.

pron. for a pronoun.	conj. for a conjunction.
part. for a participle.	comp. for the comparative degree.
adv. for an adverb.	super. for the superlative degree.
prep. for a preposition.	gen. for the genitive case.
inter. for an interjection.	ind. indeclinable.

GENERAL VOCABULARY.

- Abdo, abdēre, abdīdi, abdītum; act. to *conceal*, to *plunge*.
- Abeo, abīre, abīvi, abītum; neut. to *depart*, to *go away*.
- Absolvo, absolvēre, absolvi, absolūtum; act. to *acquit*.
- Absterreo, absterrēre, absterrui, absterrītum; act. to *frighten*.
- Abstinentia, abstinentiæ; fem. *abstinence*, *integrity*.
- Absum, abesse, abfui; irreg. to be *absent*. See sum, page 53.
- Abundē; adv. *enough*, *sufficiently*.
- Abundo, abundāre, abundāvi, abundātum; neut. to *abound*.
- Abūtor, abūti, abūsus sum; dep. to *abuse*.
- Ac; conj. *and*.
- Accēdo, accedēre, accessi, accessum; act. to *approach*.
- Accidit; imper. if *happened*.
- Accido, accidēre, accidi; supine wanting; neut. to *fall out*, to *happen*.
- Accipio, accipēre, accēpi, acceptum; act. to *receive*.
- Accipīter, accipītris; masc. a *hawk*.
- Accūso, accusāre, accusāvi, accusātum; act. to *accuse*.
- Acerbus, acerba, acerbūm; gen. acerbi; *sour*, *cruel*, *cross*.
- Achilles, Achillis; masc. *Achilles*, a Grecian general.
- Acies, aciēi; fem. an *army*.
- Acta, actæ; fem. a *shore*.
- Actium, Actiī, neut. *Actium*, a promontory of Epīrus, in Greece.
- Acus, acūs; fem. a *needle*.
- Acūtus, acūta, acūtum; gen. acūti; *sharp*, *quick*, *talented*.
- Adāmas, adamantis; masc. a *diamond*.
- Adeo, adīre, adīvi, and adii, adītum; neut. to *go to*, to *approach*.
- Adipiscor, adipisci, adeptus sum; dep. to *obtain*.
- Adjūvo, adjuvāre, adjūvi, adjūtum; act. to *help*, to *assist*.
- Admiror, admirāri, admirātus sum; dep. to *admire*, to *wonder at*.
- Admōdūm; adv. *very*, *very much*. (Not admōdūm, as on p. 156.)
- Adno, adnāre, adnāvi, adnātum; neut. to *swim to*.
- Adolescens, adolescentis; com. a *young man or woman*.

- Adōrō, adorāre, adorāvi, adorātum; act. to adore.**
- Adsum, adesse, adfui; irreg. (see sum, page 53,) to be present.**
- Advenio, advenīre, advēni, adventum; neut. to come.**
- Ædifico, ædificāre, ædificāvi, ædificātum; act. to build.**
- Ægrōto, ægrotāre, ægrotāvi, ægrotātum; neut. to be sick.**
- Ægyptus, Ægypti; fem. Ægypt, a part of Africa.**
- Ænēas, Ænēæ; dat. Ænēæ; acc. Ænēam or Ænēan; voc. Ænēa; abl. Ænēā; Æneas, a Trojan prince.**
- Æquus, æqua, æquum; gen. æqui; equal.**
- Æs, æris; neut. copper, money.**
- Æstas, æstatis; fem. summer.**
- Æstimō, æstimāre, æstimāvi, æstimātum; act. to esteem, to value.**
- Ætas, ætatis; fem. age.**
- Æthiopia, Æthiopiæ; fem. Æthiopia, a country in Africa.**
- Affero, afferre, attūli, allātum; act. to bring.**
- Affluo, affluere, affluxi, affluxum; neut. to abound.**
- Afrīca, Africæ; fem. Africa.**
- Ager, agri; masc. a field.**
- Agger, aggēris; masc. a mound, a rampart.**
- Agnosco, agnoscere, agnōvi, agnītum; act. to acknowledge.**
- Agnus, agni; masc. a lamb.**
- Ago, agēre, egi, actum; act. to drive, to do. This verb must be translated according to the noun which it governs; as, agēre navim, to steer a ship; agēre vitam, to pass a life.**
- Agricōla, agricōlæ; masc. a husbandman.**
- Albus, alba, album; gen. albi; white.**
- Alcibiādes, Alcibiādis; masc. Alcibiades, an Athenian.**
- Alexander, Alexandri; masc. Alexander, King of Macedon.**
- Algōr, algōris; masc. cold.**
- Aliēnus, aliēna, aliēnum; gen. aliēni; another man's, foreign, improper.**
- Aliquis, aliquæ, aliquod or aliquid; gen. alicūjus; some, some person or thing.**
- Allobrōges, Allobrōgum; masc. the Allobroges, a people of ancient Gaul.**
- Alo, alēre, alui, alītum and altum; act. to nourish.**
- Altus, alta, altum; gen. alti; high.**
- Amazon, Amazōnis; masc. the Amazon, a river of South America.**
- Ambītus, ambītūs; masc. literally means going around, and was generally applied to those who went around to solicit offices; hence it came to mean bribery.**

Ambo, ambæ, ambo; gen. ambōrum; *both*: like *duo*: see page 37.

Ambūlo, ambulāre, ambulāvi, ambulātum; neut. *to walk*.

America, Americæ; fem. *America*.

Amīcus, amīci; masc. *a friend*.

Amīcus, amīca, amīcum; gen. amīci; *friendly*.

Amnis, amnis; masc. *a river*.

Amo, amāre, amāvi, amātum; act. *to love*.

Amor, amōris; masc. *love*.

Anaxagōras, Anaxagōræ; masc. *Anaxagoras*, a Grecian philosopher.

Anīma, anīmæ; fem. *the soul*.

Anīmal, animālis; neut. *an animal*.

Anīmus, anīmi; masc. *the mind, courage*.

Annūo, annūre, annui; (no supine;) act. and neut. *to nod to, to favour*.

Annus, anni; masc. *a year*.

Antecello, antecellēre, antecellui; (no supine,) act. *to excel*.

Antepōno, anteponēre, anteposui, anteposītum; act. *to prefer*.

Antevenio, antevenīre, antevēni, anteventum; neut. *to precede, to go before*.

Antiōchus, Antiōchi; masc. *Antiochus*, a Grecian philosopher.

Antīquus, antīqua, antīquum; gen. antīqui; *ancient*.

Antonius, Antonii; masc. *Antony*, an infamous Roman senator.

Antrum, antri; neut. *a cave, a cavern*.

Anxius, anxia, anxiūm; *anxious*.

Apennīnus, Apennīni; masc. *a range of the Apennine mountains*.

Aperio, aperīre, aperui, apertum; act. *to open*.

Appetītus, appetītūs; masc. *the appetite*; in the plural number, *passions, affections*.

Aptē; adv. *fitly, properly*.

Aptus, apta, aptum; gen. apti; *fit, suitable*.

Aqua, Aquæ; fem. *water*.

Arbitrōr, arbitrāri, arbitrātus sum; dep. *to think, to suppose*.

Arbor, arbōris; fem. *a tree*.

Arca, arcæ; fem. *a chest*.

Arcessō, arcessēre, arcessīvi, arcessītum; act. *to call, to send for*.

Arduus, ardua, arduum; gen. ardui; *high, steep, difficult*.

Argentūm, argenti; neut. *silver*.

Arguo, arguēre, argui, argūtum; act. *to accuse, to convict*.

Ariovistus, Ariovisti; masc. *Ariovistus*, a German prince.

Aristotēles, Aristotēlis; masc. *Aristotle*, a Grecian philosopher.

Arma, armōrum; neut. arms: used only in the plural.

Arōma, aromātis; neut. seldom used in the singular. In the plural,
aromāta, aromātūm; *spices.*

Ars, artis; fem. *art.*

Arundo, arundīnis; fem. *a reed.*

Arvum, arvi, neut *a field.*

As, assis; masc. *a farthing, a cent.*

Asia. Asiæ; fem. *Asia,* one of the four quarters of the world.

Asper, aspēra, aspērum; gen. aspēri; *rough, adverse.*

Assēquor, assēqui, assecūtus; dep. *to obtain, to reach.*

Assiduus, assidua, assiduum; gen. assidui; *constant, perpetual.*

At; conj. *but.*

Athēnæ, Athenārum; fem. *Athens,* a city of Greece, (used only in the plural.)

Atheniensis, Atheniensis; masc. *an Athenian.*

Atlantīcus, Atlantīca, Atlantīcum; (like bonus,) *the Atlantic ocean.*

Atque; conj. *and.*

Attentio, attentōnis; fem. *attention.*

Attentus, attenta, attentum; gen. attenti; *attentive.*

Attēro, atterēre, attrīvi, attrītum; act. *to wear out.*

Atticus, Attīci; masc. *Atticus,* a celebrated Roman knight, who was
an intimate friend of Cicero.

Auctor, auctōris; masc. *an author, a founder.*

Auctorītas, auctoritātis; fem. *authority.*

Audacia, audaciē; fem. *boldness.*

Audax, audax, audax; gen. audācis; *bold, brave.*

Audens, audens, audens; gen. audentis; *bold, daring.*

Audio, audīre, audīvi, audītum; act. *to hear.*

Aufēro, auferre, abstūli, ablātum; act. *to take away.*

Aufugio, ausfugēre, aufügi, aufugītum; act. *to run away from, to escape.*

Augustus, Augusti; masc. *August,* the name of a month.

Augustus, Augusti; masc. *Augustus,* a Roman emperor.

Aurum, auri; neut. *gold.*

Aut; conj. *or.*

Auxilium, auxiliī; neut. *aid, assistance, auxiliary forces.*

Avaritia, avaritiē; fem. *avarice.*

Avārus, avāra, avārum; gen. avāri; *covetous, and when not connected
with any noun, an avaricious man.*

Avīdus, avīda, avīdum; gen. avīdi; *desirous, greedy of.*

Avis, avis; fem. *a bird*.

Avus, avi: masc. *a grandfather, an ancestor*.

Babylōn, Babylōnis; fem. **Babylon**, a city of Asia.

Barbārus, barbāri; masc. *a barbarian*: properly it is an adjective having *homo* understood.

Beātē, adv. *happily*.

Beātus, beāta, beātum; gen. beāti, *happy*.

Bellum, bellī, neut. *war*.

Benē; adv. *well*.

Benefaciō, benefacēre, benefēci, benefactum; neut. *to benefit, to do good to*.

Beneficiū; beneficii; neut. *a kindness*.

Benevolentia, benevolentiæ; fem. *benevolence*.

Benevōlus, benevōla, benevōlum; gen. benevōli; *benevolent, kind*.

Benignus, benigna, benignum; gen. benigni; *kind*.

Bestia; bestiæ; fem. *brutes, beasts*.

Bibo, bibēre, bibi, bibītum; act. *to drink*.

Biduum, bidui; neut. *the space of two days*.

Bonītas, bonitātis; fem. *goodness*.

Bonus, bona, bonum; gen. boni; *good*.

Brevi; adv. *in a short time*.

Brittania, Brittaniæ; fem. *Britain, England*.

Brundusium, Brundusii; neut. *Brundusium*, a town in Italy.

Cædes, cædis; fem. *slaughter, murder*.

Cæsar, Cæsāris; masc. *Cæsar, a great Roman general*.

Cæter, cætēra, cætērum; gen. cætēri; *the other, the rest*.

Cætus, more generally written cœtus, cœtūs; masc. *an assembly*.

Calamitōsus, calamitōsa, calamitōsum; gen. calamitōsi; *calamitous, miserable*.

Calcar, calcāris; neut. *a spur*.

Calidus, calida, calidum; gen. calidi; *warm, hot*.

Callidus, callida, callidum; gen. callidi; *wise, crafty*.

Canis, canis; com. *a dog*.

Cannæ, Cannārum; fem. plural; *Cannæ, a town in the south of Italy*.

(The word *Cannæ*, on p. 140, should be *Cannārum*.)

Capio, capēre, cepi, captum; act. *to take, to receive*.

Cappadocia, Cappadociæ; fem. *Cappadocia, a country of Asia Minor*.

Captus, capta, captum; gen. capti; *taken, bereft, deprived of*.

Capūlus, capūli; masc. and capūlum, capūli; neut. *a hilt or handle*.

- Caput, capītis; neut. a head.**
Carcer, carcēris; masc. a prison.
Careo, carēre, carui, carītum; neut. to want, to be destitute of.
Carmen, carmīnis; neut. a song, a poem, a verse.
Carthagenienses, Carthageniensium; masc. *Carthageniens*.
Carthāgo, Carthagīnis; fem. *Carthage*, a city of Africa, opposite to Rome.
Carus, cara, carum; gen. cari, dear.
Castrum, castri; neut. a castle: generally used in the plural, Castra, castrōrum, meaning camp or camps.
Catēna, catēnæ; fem. a chain.
Catilīna, Catilinæ; masc. *Cataline*, a Roman who formed a conspiracy to betray his country.
Cato, Catōnis; masc. *Cato*, a Roman philosopher.
Catūlus, catūli; masc. a whelp; the young of all animals.
Causa, causæ; fem. cause.
Caveo, cavēre, cavi, cautum; act. to beware, to take care of.
Cedo, cedēre, cessi, cessum; act. to yield, to give place to.
Celer, or celēris, celēris, celēre; gen. celēris; swift, quick.
Celerītas, celerītatis; fem. celerity.
Celeriter; adv. quickly.
Census, censūs; masc. a man's estate, wealth.
Centum; ind. a hundred.
Ceres, Cerēris; fem. *Ceres*, the goddess of tillage.
Certāmen, certamīnis; neut. a contest, a battle.
Certus, certa, certum; gen. certi; certain, sure.
Cethēgus, Cethēgi; masc. *Cethagus*, a Roman, concerned in Cataline's conspiracy.
Charta, chartæ; fem. paper.
Cibus, cibi; masc. meat, food.
Cicātrix, cicatricis; fem. a wound.
Cicēro, Cicerōnis; masc. *Cicero*, the great Roman orator.
Cilicia, Ciliciæ; fem. *Cilicia*, a country of Asia Minor.
Cimon, Cimonis; masc. *Cimon*, an illustrious Athenian.
Cingo, cingēre, cinxi, cinctum; act. to gird, to surround.
Circumveho, circumvehēre, circumvexi, circumvectum; act. to carry about.
Circumvenio, circumvenīre, circumvēni, circumventum; act. to surround, to besiege.
Citō; adv. quickly, shortly.

Civīlis, civīlis, civīle; gen. civīlis; civil, pertaining to the state.

Civis, civis; com. a citizen.

Civītās, civītātis; fem. a city.

Clam; adv. secretly.

Clamo, clamāre, clamāvi, clamātum; act. to cry out.

Claritūdo, claritudīnis; fem. renown, fame.

Clarus, clara, clarum; gen. clari; famous.

Classis, classis; fem. a fleet.

Clemens, clemens, clemens; gen. clementis; merciful, mild.

Clementia, clementiæ; fem. clemency.

Clodius, Clodii; masc. Clodius, an infamous Roman, who was killed by Milo.

Cōptum, cōpti; neut. a beginning, an enterprise.

Cōstus, cōstūs; masc. an assembly.

Cogitatio, Cogitationis; fem. a thought.

Cogitō, cogitāre, cogitāvi, cogitātum; act. to think.

Cognosco, cognoscēre, cognōvi, cognitūm; act. to know.

Cohors, cohortis; fem. a cohort, a band of soldiers.

Collīgo, colligēre, collēgi, collectum; act. to collect.

Colloquium, colloquii; neut. conversation, conference.

Colo, colēre, colui, cultum; act. to cultivate, to worship.

Color, colōris; masc. a colour.

Colossus, colossi; masc. a colossus, an image much larger than the life.

Columba, columbæ; fem. a dove.

Comes, comītis; com. a companion, an attendant.

Commemōro, commemorāre, commemorāvi, commemorātum; act. to commemorate, to mention.

Committo, committēre, commīsi, commissum; act. to commit, to fight: committēre pugnam, to join battle.

Commōdus, commōda, commōdum; gen. commōdi; convenient.

Commūnis, commūnis, commūne, gen. commūnis; common.

Compāro, comparāre, comparāvi, comparātum; act. to compare, to provide.

Compello, compellēre, compēli, compulsum; act. to drive, to compel.

Complector, complecti, complexus sum; dep. to embrace.

Compōno, componēre, composui, compositum; act. to compare, to place side by side.

Compositē; adv. in order, orderly.

Concēdo, concedēre, concessi, concessum; neut. to yield to, to grant.

- Concupisco, concupiscere, concupivi, concupitum; act. *to covet, to desire.***
- Condemno, condemnare, condemnavi, condemnatum; act. *to condemn.***
- Condo, condere, condidi, conditum; act. *to hide, to build.***
- Condūcit; imper. *it is profitable.***
- Condūco, conducere, conduxi, conductum; act. *to conduct.***
- Conféro, conferre, contuli, collatum; act. *to bring, to compare; conferre se; to betake himself, to go.***
- Conficio, conficere, confeci, confectum; act. *to finish, to kill.***
- Confido, confidere, confidi, and confisus sum; *to confide in.***
- Confirmo, confirmare, confirmavi, confirmatum; act. *to confirm, to strengthen.***
- Confiteor, confitiri; confessus sum; dep. *to confess.***
- Conjūro, conjurare, conjuravi, conjuratūm; act. *to conspire together, to plot; conjurati, conspiratōrum; conspirators.***
- Conscientia, conscientiæ; fem. *conscience.***
- Conscisco, consciscere, concivī, concitum; act. *to procure, to get.***
- Conscius, conscia, concium; gen. consciī; *conscious.***
- Cons̄equor, cons̄equi, consecutus sum; dep. *to obtain, to attain.***
- Conservo, conservare, conservāvi, conservatum; act. *to preserve.***
- Consido, considere, consēdi, concessum; neut. *to sit down.***
- Consilium, consilii; neut. *a design, counsel.***
- Consolor, consolari, consolatus sum; dep. *to console.***
- Conspirator, conspiratōris; masc. *a conspirator.***
- Constantia, constantiæ; fem. *constancy.***
- Constat, imper. *it is evident.***
- Consuetudo, consuetudinis; fem. *custom.***
- Consul, consūlis; masc. *a consul.***
- Consulatus, consulatūs; masc. *the consulship.***
- Consulo, consulere, consului, consultum; act. *to consult.***
- Contemno, contemnere, contempti, contemptum; act. *to despise.***
- Contendo, contendere, contendi, contensum; act. and neut. *to stretch, to march.***
- Contentio, contentiōnis; fem. *contention.***
- Contentus, contenta, contentum; gen. contenti; *content.***
- Contiguus, contigua, contiguum; gen. contigui; *near, contiguous.***
- Contineo, continēr, continui, contentum; act. *to contain, to keep.***
- Contra; adv. *on the contrary, on the other hand.***
- Contrucidō, contrucidare, contrucidāvi, contrucidatum; act. *to slay to kill.***

- Contrarius, contraria, contrarium; gen. contrarii; *contrary to.*
 Convenienter; adv. *consistently, agreeably to.*
- Convenio, convenire, convēni, conventum; neut. *to meet.*
- Copia, copiæ; fem. *an abundance;* plur. copiæ; *military forces.*
- Cor, cordis; neut. *the heart.*
- Corpus, corpōris; neut. *a body.*
- Cortex, cortīcis; masc. or fem. *a cork, the bark of a tree.*
- Credo, credēre, credīdi, credītum; act. *to believe.*
- Cremo, cremāre, cremāvi, cremātum; act. *to burn.*
- Creō, creāre, creāvi, creātum; act. *to create.*
- Cresco, crescēre, crevi, cretum; neut. *to grow, to increase.*
- Crīmen, crīminis; neut. *crime, a fault.*
- Crocodīlus, crocodili, masc. *a crocodile.*
- Crēsus, Crēsi; masc. *Crēsus, King of Lydia, famed for his wealth.*
- Crucifīgo, crucifigēre, crucifixi, crucifixum; act. *to crucify.*
- Cruentus, cruenta, cruentum; gen. cruenti; *bloody, cruel.*
- Crus, cruris; neut. *the leg.*
- Cubītus, cubīti; masc. *a cubit, a measure of 18 inches.*
- Cuique; dative of quisque, quæque, quodque; *to each, to every one.*
- Culpa, culpæ; fem. *blame, a fault.*
- Culter, cultri; masc. *a knife.*
- Cūm; conj. *when.*
- Cunaxa, Cunaxæ; *Cunaxa, a city of Asia Minor.*
- Cunctus, cuncta, cunctum; gen. cuncti; *all, the whole, altogether.*
- Cupidītas, cupiditātis; fem. *a desire.*
- Cupīdus, cupīda, cupīdum; gen. cupīdi; *desirous.*
- Cupio, cupēre, or cupīre, cupīvi, cupītum; act. *to desire.*
- Cura, curæ; fem. *care.*
- Curo, curāre, curāvi, curātum; act. *to take care of, to cure, to heal.*
- Curro, currēre, cucūrri, cursum; neut. *to run.*
- Currus, currūs, masc. *a chariot.*
- Cursus, cursūs; masc. *a course.*
- Custodio, custodīre, custodīvi, custodītum; act. *to guard.*
- Cyrus, Cyri; masc. *Cyrus, King of Persia.*
- Dāmno, damnāre, damnāvi, damnātum; act. *to condemn.*
- Debeo, debēre, debui, debitum; act. *to owe, to be obliged;* and when used with the infinitive, *I ought or should.*
- Decēdo, decedēre, decessi, decessum; neut. *to depart.*
- Decem; a numeral adj. ind. *ten.*

Decerno, decernēre, decrēvi, decretūm; act. to decree, to resolve.
Decimus, decimā, decimūp; gen. decimi; the tenth.

Decus, decoris; neut. an ornament.

Dedēcūs, dedecōris; neut. disgrace.

Dedo, dedēre, dedīdi, dedītūm; act. to submit, to give up.

Defendo, defendēre, defendi, defensūm; act. to defend.

Defetiscor, defetisci, defessus sum; neut. to be weary.

Deficio, deficēre, defēci, defectūm; act. to leave, or fail one.

Deinde; adv. afterwards.

Delābor, delābi, delapsus sum; dep. to slip; to fall to decay; to flow, as a river.

Delecto, delectāre, delectāvi, delectātūm; act. to delight.

Deleo, delēre, delēvi, delētūm; act. to blot out, to destroy.

Delibēro, deliberāre, deliberāvi, deliberātūm; act. to deliberate.

Delīgo, deligēre, delēgi, delectūm; act. to choose.

Delphi, Delphōrum; masc. *Delphi*, a city of Greece, famous for its oracle of Apollo.

Delphīnus, delphīni; masc. a dolphin.

Dementia, dementiæ; fem. madness, folly.

Demonstro, demonstrāre, demonstrāvi, demonstrātūm; act. to show, to demonstrate.

Demosthēnes, Demosthēnis; masc. *Demosthenes*, the celebrated Grecian orator.

Dens, dentis; fem. a tooth.

Deplōro, deplorāre, deplorāvi, deplorātūm; act. to deplore.

Deposco, deposcēre, depoposci, deposcītūm; act. to require, to demand.

Desēro, deserēre, deserui, desertūm; act. to abandon.

Deterreo, deterrēre, deterriui, deterritūm; act. to deter.

Detrimentum, detrimenti; neut. hurt, detriment.

Detrūdo, detrudēre, detrūsi, detrusum; act. to shave from.

Deus, Dei; masc. God. Sometimes it is feminine, and signifies a goddess.

Diāna, Diānæ; fem. *Diana*, the goddess of hunting.

Dico, dicēre, dixi, dictūm; act. to say.

Dictātor, dictatōris; masc. a dictator.

Dies, diēi; masc. or fem. in the sing. and masc. in the plural; a day.

Difficilis, difficilis, difficile; gen. difficilis; difficult.

Dignūs, digna, dignūm; gen. digni; worthy.

Dii, plura of Deus, for Dei, Deōrum; masc. the gods.

Diligentia, diligentia; fem. *diligence*.

Diogēnes, Diogēnis; masc. *Diogenes*, a Grecian philosopher.

Discēdo, discedēre, discessi, discessum; neut. *to depart*.

Discipūlus, discipūli; masc. *a scholar, a disciple, a learner*.

Disco, discēre, didicī; (no supine,) act. *to learn*.

Discordia, discordiæ; fem. *discord*.

Desertus, deserta, desertum; gen. *deserti*; *eloquent*.

Displiceo, displicēre, displicui, displicitūm; neut. *to displease*.

Dispūto, disputāre, disputāvi, disputātum; act. *to dispute, to argue*.

Distinctē; adv. *distinctly, methodically*.

Disto, distāre, distīti; neut. *to be distant*.

Diū; adv. *long*; comp. diutiūs; *longer*; super. diutissimē; *longest*.

Diutinē; adv. *a long time*.

Dives, dives, dives; gen. divitīs; *rich*.

Divīnus, divīna, divīnum; gen. divīni; *divine, noble*.

Divitiæ, divitiārum; fem. plur. *riches*.

Do, dāre, dedi, datum; act. *to give*.

Doceo, docēre, docui, doctum; act. *to teach*.

Doctrīna, doctrīnæ; fem. *knowledge, learning*.

Doctus, docta, doctum; gen. docti; part. or adj. *learned*.

Dolor, dolōris; masc. *pain, grief*.

Domīnus, domīni; masc. *a master*.

Domī, domīre, domīs, domītum, act. *to subdue*.

Domus, domūs, or domi; fem. *a house*.

Dono, donāre, donāvi, donātum; act. *to give*.

Dormio, dormīre, dormīvi, dormītum; neut. *to sleep*.

Ducenti, ducentæ, ducenta; gen. ducentōrum; *two hundred*.

Duco, ducēre, duxi, ductum; act. *to lead, to induce, to draw*.

Dulcis, dulcis, dulce; gen. dulcis; *sweet*.

Dum; adv. *whilst*.

Dummōdo; conj. *if, provided that*.

Duo, duœ, duo; gen. duōrum; *two*.

Duplex, duplex, duplex; gen. duplīcīs; *double, two-fold*.

Durus, dura, dūrum; gen. duri; *hard*.

Dux, ducis; masc. *a general, a leader*.

Edax, edax, edax; gen. edācis; *eating, consuming*.

Edītus, edīta, edītum; gen. edīti; part. and adj. *descended from*.

Edo, edēre, edēdi, edītum; act. *to utter, to publish*.

Efficio, efficēre, effēci, effectum; act. *to effect, to make*.

Effugio, effugēre, effūgi, effugītum; act. to escape.

Egeo, egēre, egui; (no supine,) neut. to need.

Ego; pron. I. See page 41.

Egredior, egrēdi, egressus sum; dep. to go out.

Egyptus; see Ægyptus.

Elephas, elephantis; masc. an elephant; and also, elephantus,—i.

Elis, Elīdis; fem. Elīs, a country of Peloponnesus.

Eloquentia, eloquentiæ; fem. eloquence.

Emo, emēre, emi, emptum; act. to buy.

Emolumētum, emolumēti; neut. advantage, profit.

Ensis, ensis; masc. a sword.

Eō; adv. to that pass, to that degree, to that pitch.

Eo, īre, ivi, itum; neut. to go.

Epaminondas, Epaminondæ; masc. 1st dec. Epaminondas, a celebrated Theban general.

Ephēsus, Ephēsi; fem. Ephesus, a city of Asia Minor.

Epicūrus, Epicūri; masc. Epicurus, a Grecian philosopher.

Epistōla, epistōlæ; fem. a letter, an epistle.

Equanimitās, equanimitātis; fem. equanimity.

Eques, equit̄is; masc. a horseman, a knight.

Equestris, equestris, equestre; gen. equestris; equestrian.

Equidem; conj. truly, verily.

Equīto, equitāre, equitāvi, equitātum; neut. to ride upon horses.

Equus, equi; masc. a horse.

Erādo, eradēre, erāsi, erāsum, act. to efface.

Ergo; conj. therefore.

Eripio, eripēre, eripui, ereptum; act. to seize.

Errātum, errāti; neut. an error, vice.

Erro, errāre, errāvi, errātum; neut. to err.

Error, errōris; masc. an error.

Erudio, erudīre, erudīvi and erudii, eruditum; act. to teach.

Esca, escæ; fem. meat, food.

Et; conj. and. When there are two et's following each other in the same sentence, the first et should be rendered both, and the last one and.

Eternus, eterna, eternum; gen. eterni; eternal.

Etiam; conj. also.

Etsi; conj. though, although.

Euphrātes, Euphrātis; masc. the Euphrates, a river of Mesopotamia.

- Eurōpa, Eurōpæ; fem. *Europe*, one of the four quarters of the world.
- Eurōtas, Eurōtæ, Eurōtæ, Eurōtam or Eurōtan, Eurōta, Eurōtæ; 1st dec. masc. *the Eurotas*, a river of Laconia in Greece.
- Evādo, evadēre, evāsi, evāsum; neut. and act. *to get out of, to evade*.
- Evenio, evenīre, evēni, eventum; neut. *to come out, to happen*.
- Eventus, eventūs; masc. *an event, an issue*.
- Excīto, excitāre, excitāvi, excitātum; act. *to move, to excite*.
- Exēdo, exedēre, exēdi, exēsum; act. *to eat, to consume*.
- Exemplum, exempli; neut. *an example*.
- Exeo, exīre, exīvi, exītum; neut. *to go out*.
- Exercītus, exercitūs; masc. *an army*.
- Eximius, exīmia, exīmīum; gen. eximii; *choice, wonderful, remarkable*.
- Existīmo, existimāre, existimāvi, existimātum; act. *to think*.
- Exitium, exitii; neut. *destruction*.
- Expatrior, expatiāri, expatiātus sum; dep. *to walk abroad*.
- Expectatio, expectatiōnis; fem. *expectation*.
- Expēdit; imper. *it is profitable*.
- Expeditiō, expeditiōnis; fem. *an expedition*.
- Expello, expellēre, expūli, expulsum; act. *to expel*.
- Experīor, experīri, expertus sum; dep. *to try*.
- Expers, expers, expers; gen. expertis; *free from, void of*.
- Expertus, experta, expertum; gen. experti; *skillful, experienced in*.
- Explorātor, exploratōris; masc. *a scout, a spy*.
- Extinguo, extingueōre, extinxī, extinctum; act. *to extinguish, to kill*.
- Exubēro, exuberāre, exuberāvi, exuberātum; neut. *to abound*.
- Exul, exūlis; com. *an exile, a banished man or woman*.
- Exuviae, exuviārum; fem. *spoils*.
- Fabius, Fabii; masc. *Fabius*, a Roman general.
- Fabūla, fabūlæ; fem. *a fable*.
- Facies, faciēi; fem. *a face*.
- Faciliē; adv. *easily*; comp. facilius; super. facillīme.
- Facīnus, facinōris; neut. *an action, a deed*.
- Facio, facēre, feci, factum; act. *to do, to make*. This verb, like *ego* and *habeo*, is construed variously, according to its noun, as, *facēre verba, to speak, to hold a discourse*.
- Facultas, facultātis; fem. *aptiness, means, wealth*.
- Fæx, fæcis; fem. *the dregs, or lees of wine, sediment*.
- Fames, famis; fem. *hunger*.
- Famūlor, famulāri, famulātus sum; dep. *to wait upon, to serve*.

Fatum, fati; neut. *fate*.

Faveo, favēre, favi, fautum; neut. *to favour*.

Felix, felix, felix, (see p. 34); *happy*.

Fera, feræ; fem. *a wild beast*.

Ferax, ferax, ferax; gen. ferācis; *fertile*.

Ferē; adv. *almost*.

Ferīnus, ferīna, ferīnum; (like bonus,) *of a wild beast, or wild beast's—
as, pellis ferīna, a wild beast's skin.*

Fero, ferre, tuli, latum; irreg. *to bear, to carry; also, to say; as, ferunt,
they carry it about, that is, they say.*

Ferrum, ferri; neut. *iron, a sword*.

Fertilis, fertilis, fertile; (like mitis,) *fertile*.

Ficus, ficūs; fem. *a fig*.

Fides, fidēi; fem. *faith, credit*.

Fidēlis, fidēlis, fidèle; gen. fidēlis; *faithful, trusty*.

Fido, fidēre, fidi, and fisus sum; *to trust*.

Filia, filiæ; fem. *a daughter*.

Finio, finīre, finīvi, finītum; act. *to finish*.

Finis, finis; masc. *an end, a border, a limit*.

Flamma, flammæ; fem. *a flame*.

Fleo, flēre, flevi, fletum; act. *to weep*.

Florens, florens, florens; gen. florentis; *flowering*.

Floreo, florēre, florui; (no supine,) neut. *to flourish*.

Flumen, flumīnis; neut. *a river*.

Fluo, fluēre, fluxi, fluxum; neut. *to flow*.

Fluvius, fluvii; masc. *a river*.

Fœdus, fœda, fœdum; gen. fœdi; *filthy, base, vile*.

Fœdus, fœdēris; neut. *a league, a treaty*.

Fœmīna, fœmīnæ; fem. *a woman*.

Fons, fontis; fem. *a fountain*.

Foris; adv. *abroad, without*.

Formōsus, formōsa, formōsum; gen. formōsi; *beautiful*.

Fortis, fortis, forte; gen. fortis; *brave*.

Fortīter, fortītūs, fortissimē; adv. *bravely, more bravely, most bravely*.

Fortūna, fortūnæ; fem. *fortune*.

Fossa, fossæ; fem. *a ditch*.

Frango, frangēre, fregi, fractum; act. *to break*.

Frater, fratris; masc. *a brother*.

Fraus, fraudis; fem. *fraud*.

Frequento, frequentāre, frequentāvi, frequentātum; act. to frequent, to people a place.

Fretum, freti; a strait, a frith.

Fretus, freta, fretum; gen. freti; trusting to, relying on.

Frigidus, frigida, frigidum; (like bonus,) frigid, cold.

Frons, frondis; fem. a leaf of a tree.

Frugalitas, frugalitatis; fem. frugality.

Fruges, frugum; fem. plur. fruit, corn.

Frumentum, frumenti; neut. corn.

Fruor, frui, fructus, or fructus sum; dep. to enjoy.

Fugio, fugere, fugi, fugitum; act. to fly from, to escape.

Fugo, fugare, fugavi, fugatum; act. to put to flight.

Fulgeo, fulgere, fulsi; (no supine,) neut. to shine.

Fulvia, Fulviæ; fem. *Fulvia*, a woman of Rome, who made known to Cicero the designs which Cataline and the other conspirators had against his life.

Fundamentum, fundamenti; neut. a foundation.

Fundo, fundare, fundavi, fundatum; act. to found, to establish.

Fundo, fundere, fudi, fusum; act. to pour out, to vanquish.

Fungor, fungi, functus sum; dep. to discharge an office or duty.

Funis, funis, masc. and fem. a rope.

Furor, furoris; masc. madness, fury.

Furtum, furti; neut. theft.

Futurus, futura, futurum; gen. futuri; (part. of esse,) about to be, the future.

Gaditānus, Gaditāna, Gaditānum; gen. Gaditāni; of, or belonging to ancient Gades; the *fretæ Gaditānae*, are what are now called the Straits of Gibraltar.

Galea, galeæ; fem. a helmet.

Galli, Gallōrum; masc. the Gauls.

Gallia, Galliæ; fem. ancient Gaul, now France.

Gallus, Galli; masc. a Gaul.

Gaudeo, gaudere, gavisus sum; neut. to rejoice.

Gemma, gemmæ; fem. a gem. a rich treasure.

Gens, gentis; fem. a nation.

Geographia, geographiæ; fem. geography.

Germāni, Germanōrum; masc. the Germans.

Gero, gerere, gessi, gestum; act. to carry on.

Gestio, gestire, gestivi, gestitum; neut. to rejoice.

Gigno, gignere, genui, genitum; act. to beget, to produce.

Glacies, glaciēi; fem. *ice.*

Gloria, gloriæ; fem. *glory.*

Glorior, gloriāri, gloriātus sum; dep. *to boast.*

Græcus, græca, græcum; (like bonus,) *Græcian.*

Grammatica, grammaticæ; fem. *grammar.*

Gratia, gratiæ; fem. *favour, sake, cause.*

Gratus, grata, gratum; gen. *grati;* *grateful, acceptable.*

Gravis, gravis, grave; gen. *gravis;* *heavy.*

Grecia, Greciæ; fem. *Greece.*

Grotius, Grotii; masc. *Grotius,* a most distinguished German author, who flourished about two hundred years ago.

Gubernacūlum, gubernacūli; neut. *the helm of a ship.*

Habeo, habēre, habui, habitum; act. *to have, to esteem, to reckon.* But the translation must depend upon the noun which it governs; as, *habēre orationēm, to deliver an oration.*

Hæreo, hærēre, hæsi, hæsum; neut. *to stick.*

Hannibal, Hannibālis; masc. *Hannibal,* a Carthaginian general.

Hector, Hectōris; masc. *Hector,* a Trojan general.

Hei! inter. *ah!*

Helēna, Helēnæ; fem. *Helen,* a Grecian woman of great beauty whom Paris carried to Troy; and thence arose the Trojan war.

Helōtes, Helōtum; masc. *the Helots,* a people whom the Spartans held in slavery.

Herē; adv. *yesterday;* sometimes spelled *herē.*

Heu! inter. *alas!*

Hic, hæc, hoc; this. See page 44.

Hiems, hiēmis; fem. *winter.*

Hispania, Hispaniæ; fem. *Spain,* a country in the south of Europe.

Homērus, Homēri; masc. *Homer,* an ancient Greek poet.

Homicidium, homicidii; neut. *murder.*

Homo, homīnis; com. *a man or woman.* *Homīnes,* plur. *mankind.*

Honestas, honestātis; fem. *honesty.*

Honestus, honesta, honestum; gen. *honesti;* *noble, honest.*

Honor, honōris; masc. *honour.*

Honōro, honorāre, honorāvi, honorātum; act. *to honour.*

Hora, horæ; fem. *an hour.*

Horatius, Horatii; masc. *Horace,* the great lyric poet of the Romans.

Hortor, hortāri, hortātus sum; dep. *to exhort, to advise.*

Hortus, horti; masc. *a garden.*

Hostis, hostis; masc. *an enemy.*

Hūc; adv. *hither, here.*

Iconium, Iconii; neut. *Iconium*, a town in Asia Minor.

Ietus, ictūs; masc. *a blow.*

Idem, eādem, idem; gen. ejusdem; *the same.*

Igitur; conj. *therefore.*

Ignārus, ignāra, ignārum; gen. ignāri; *ignorant.*

Ignis, ignis; masc. *fire.*

Ignōtus, ignōta, ignōtūm; (like bonus,) *unknown.*

Ille, illa, illud; gen. illīus; *he, she, it.* See page 43.

Illecēbra, illegēbræ; fem. *an enticement.*

Illustris, illustris, illustre; gen. illustris; *illustrious.*

Illyrius, Illyrii; masc. *an Illyrian.*

Imāgo, imaginis; fem. *an image.*

Imītor, imitāri, imitātus sum; dep. *to imitate.*

Immēmor, immēmor, immēmor; gen. immemōris; *unmindful.*

Immineo, imminēre, imminui; neut. *to threaten.*

Immortālis, immortālis, immortāle; gen. immortālis; *immortal.*

Immutātus, immutāta, immutātum; gen. immutāti; adj. *unchanged.*

Impendeo, impendēre, impendi, impensum; neut. *to hang over, to threaten.*

Imperātor, imperatōris; masc. *a commander.*

Imperiōsus, imperiōsa, imperiōsum; gen. imperiōsi; *impious, that can rule or govern.*

Imperium, imperii; neut. *command, government.*

Impēro, imperāre, imperāvi, imperātum; act. *to command, to reign.*

Impertio, impertīre, impertīvi, impertītum; act. *to impart.*

Impētus, impētūs; masc. *an attack.*

Impiētas, impiētās; fem. *impiety.*

Impleo, implēre, implēvi, implētum; act. *to fill.*

Incēdo, incedēre, incessi, incessum; neut. *to walk.*

Incētus, incēta, incētum; gen. incēti; *uncertain.*

Incōlo, incolēre, incolui, incultum; act. *to inhabit.*

Incommōdum, incommōdi; neut. *a loss, an inconvenience.*

Incredibīlis, incredibīlis, incredibīle; (like mitis,) *incredible, not to be believed.*

Indē; adv. *thence, from that place.*

India, Indiē; fem. *India*, the south eastern part of Asia.

Indigeo, indigēre, indigi; (no supine,) neut. *to want.*

Indōles, indōlis; fem. *a disposition.*

Induo, induēre, indui, indūtum; act. *to cover, to clothe.*

- Industria**, *industriæ; fem. industry.*

Inertia, *inertiæ; fem. sluggishness.*

Infinītus, *infinita, infinitum; gen. infiniti; infinite.*

Inflammo, *inflammare, inflammavi, inflammatum; act. to inflame.*

Ingenium, *ingenii; neut. the mind, the talents, the disposition.*

Ingens, *ingens, ingens; gen. ingentis; great.*

Ingredior, *ingredi, ingressus sum; dep. to enter.*

Inimīcus, *inimica, inimicum; gen. inimici; hostile, inimical.*

Initium, *initii; neut. a beginning.*

Injuria, *injuriae; fem. an injury.*

Inopia, *inopiæ; fem. want.*

Inops, *inops, inops; gen. inöpis; poor, destitute of.*

Insidiæ, *insidiarum; fem. plur. snares, an ambush.*

Insipiens, *insipientis; adj. foolish.*

Insūla, *insulæ; fem. an island.*

Insum, *inesse, infui; neut. to be in.*

Intentus, *intenta, intentum; gen. intenti; intent upon.*

Interdīco, *interdicere, interdixi, interdictum; act. to interdict, to prohibit, to forbid.*

Interea; *adv. in the mean time.*

Interficio, *interficere, interfeci, interfectum; act. to slay.*

Interpres, *interpretis; com. an interpreter.*

Interpretor, *interpretari, interpretatus sum, dep. to explain.*

Intersum, *interesse, interfui; neut. to be present.*

Intervenio, *intervenire, interveni, interventum; act. to intervene, to put an end to.*

Invenio, *invenire, inveni, inventum; act. to invent, to find.*

Invideo, *invidere, invidi, invisum; neut. to envy.*

Invidia, *invidiæ; fem. envy.*

Invisus, *invisa, invisum; gen. invisi; odious, hated.*

Ipse, *ipsa, ipsum; gen. ipsius; pron. he, she, it.*

Ira, *iræ; fem. anger.*

Irātus, *irata, iratum; (like bonus,) angry.*

Irretio, *irretire, irretivi, irretitum; act. to entangle.*

Irrideo, *irridere, irrisi, irrisum; act. to laugh at, to deride.*

Is, *ea, id; he, she, it. See page 44.*

Isocrātes, *Isocratis; masc. Isocrates, a Grecian philosopher.*

Iste, *ista, istud; gen. istius; pron. this, that.*

Ita; *adv. so, in that manner.*

Italia, *Italiæ; fem. Italy, a country in the south of Europe.*

- Iter, itinēris; neut. *a journey.*
- Itērum; adv. *again.*
- Jam; adv. *now.*
- Joannes, Joannis; masc. *John.*
- Juba, jubæ; fem. *a mane;* juba leōnis; *a lion's mane.*
- Jubeo, jubēre, jussi, jussum; act. *to command.*
- Judex, Judicis; com. *a judge.*
- Judicium, judicīi; neut. *judgment, a trial.*
- Judīco, judicāre, judicāvi, judicātum; act. *to judge.*
- Jugurtha, Jugurthæ; masc. *Jugurtha,* a king of Numidia.
- Julius Cæsar, Julii Cæsāris; masc. *Julius Cæsar,* a Roman general.
- Jungo, jungēre, junxi, junctum; act. *to join.*
- Junius, Junii; masc. *June.*
- Juno, Junōnis; fem. *Juno,* the queen of the goddesses.
- Jupiter; gen. Jovis; dat. Jovi; acc. Jovem; voc. *Jupiter;* abl. *Jove;* masc. *Jupiter,* the greatest of the heathen deities; sometimes means *the air,* as he was the god of the heavens.
- Juro, jurāre, jurāvi, jurātum; act. *to swear.*
- Jus, juris; neut. *right, law, justice.*
- Justitia, justitiæ; fem. *justice.*
- Justus, justa, justum; gen. justi; *just.*
- Juvēnis, juvēnis; com. *a youth.*
- Juvo, juvāre, juvi, jutum; act. *to help, to do good.*
- Labium, labii; neut. *a lip.*
- Labor, labi, lapsus sum; dep. *to fall.*
- Labor, labōris; masc. *labour.*
- Lac, lactis; neut. *milk.*
- Lacedæmon, Lacedæmōnis; fem. *Lacedæmon,* a city of Greece.
- Lacertus, lacerti; masc. *an arm.*
- Lacrȳma, lacrȳmæ; fem. *a tear.*
- Lana, lanæ; fem. *wool.*
- Lanātus, lanāta, lanātum; gen. lanāti; *woolly, bearing wool.*
- Largīter; adv. *largely, much.*
- Lateo, latēre, latui; neut. *to be concealed.*
- Latro, latrōnis; masc. *a robber.*
- Latus, latēris; neut. *the side.*
- Laudo, laudāre, laudāvi, laudātum; act. *to praise.*
- Laus, laudis; fem. *praise.*
- Lavinium, Lavinii; neut. *Lavinium,* a town in Italy.

Lectio, lectiōnis; fem. *a lesson.*

Legātus, legāti; masc. *an ambassador.*

Legio, legiōnis; fem. *a legion, a band of soldiers.*

Lego, legēre, legi, lectum; act. *to read.*

Lenis, lenis, lene; gen. lenis; *kind, soft, gentle.*

Leo, leōnis; masc. *a lion.*

Lepīdus, lepīda, lepīdum; gen. lepīdi; *witty, smart.*

Lepus, lepōris; masc. *a hare.*

Lesbos, Lesbi; fem. *Lesbos, an island in the Ægean sea.*

Lethālis, lethālis, lethāle; gen. lethālis; *deadly.*

Lex, legis; fem. *a law.*

Liber, libri; masc. *a book.*

Libēri, liberōrum; masc. pl. *children.*

Libēro, liberāre, liberāvi, liberātum; act. *to liberate, to set free.*

Libido, or lubido, lubidinis; fem. *desire, pleasure, criminal appetite.*

Licet; imper. present tense; *it is lawful.*

Licet; conj. *although.*

Limen, limiñis; neut. *a threshold of a door.*

Lingua, linguae; fem. *a language.*

Linquo, linquēre, liqui, lictum; act *to leave.*

Lis, litis; fem. *a strife, a dispute.*

Litēra, litéræ; fem. *a letter; in the plural, writings, learning, literature.*

Litus, litōris; neut. *the sea shore.*

Loco, locāre, locāvi, locātum; act. *to place, to let or lease.*

Locūples, locūples, locūples; gen. locuplētis; *rich.*

Locus, loci; masc. *a place; plural, loci and loca, locōrum; neut.*

Longitūdo, longitudinis; fem. *length.*

Longus, longa, longum; gen. longi; *long.*

Loquor, loqui, locūtus or loquūtus sum; dep. *to speak.*

Lubet; imper. *it pleaseth, same as libet.*

Luceo, lucēre, luxi; (*no supine,*) neut. *to shine.*

Ludo, ludēre, lusi, lusum; neut. *to play.*

Luna, lunæ, fem. *the moon.*

Lupus, lupi; masc. *a wolf.*

Lusitania, Lusitanæ; fem. *Portugal, or rather a part of that country now called Portugal.*

Lux, lucis; fem. *light.*

Luxuria, luxuriæ; fem. *luxury.*

Macēdo, Macedōnis; masc. *a Macedonian.*

Macedonia, Macedonie; fem. *Macedonia*.

Magister, *magistri*; masc. *a master*.

Magistratus, *magistratus*; masc. *magistracy, a magistrate*.

Magnitudo, *magnitudinis*; fem. *size, magnitude*.

Magnus, *magna, magnum*; (like bonus,) *great*. See page 40.

Majestas, *majestatis*; fem. *majesty*.

Majores, *majorum*; plural, masc. *ancestors*.

Malè; adv. *badly, wickedly*.

Maledico, *maledicere, maledixi, maledictum*; act. *to revile*.

Malefacio, *maleficere, malefeci, malefactum*; act. *to do an ill, to revile, to abuse*.

Malum, *mali*; neut. *evil*.

Malus, *mala, malum*; (like bonus,) *bad*. See page 40.

Mandatum, *mandati*; neut. *a command*.

Mane; adv. *early in the morning*.

Maneo, *manere, mansi, mansum*; neut. and act. *to remain, to wait for*.

Manus, *manūs*; fem. *the hand*.

Marcus Antonius, Marci Antonii; masc. *Mark Antony*, a Roman.

Margarita, *margaritæ*; fem. *a pearl*.

Mare, *maris*; neut. *the sea*.

Marinus, *marīna, marīnum*; gen. *marīni*; *marine, relating to the sea*.

Mater, *matris*; fem. *a mother*.

Mausōlus, Mausōli; masc. *Mausolus*, a king of Caria, whose monument called the *Mausolēum*, was reckoned among the seven wonders of the world.

Maximus, *maxīma, maxīmum*; gen. *maxīmi*; *the greatest*. See p. 40.

Me; me; acc. and abl. of ego; *I*. See page 41.

Mecēnas, *Mecēnātis*; masc. *Mecēnas*, a Roman knight.

Medius, *media, medium*; gen. *medii*; *the middle, common*.

Meipsum; *me myself*; compounded of me, me; and ipsum, *myself*; from ipse: declined like ego, and ipse, separately.

Mel, *mellis*; neut. *honey*.

Membrāna, *membrānæ*, fem. *a membrane*.

Memīni; defective verb, perfect tense, with the signification of a present tense; *I remember*; inf. *meminisse*; imper. *memento, mementōte*.

Memor, *memor, memor*; gen. *mémōris*; *mindful*.

Memōro, *memorāre, memorāvi, memorātum*; act. *to make mention of, to mention*.

Menelāus, Menelāi; masc. *Menelaus*, a king of Sparta.

- Mens, mentis; fem. the mind.**
- Mensis, mensis; masc. a month.**
- Merces, mercēdis; fem. a reward.**
- Meridies, meridiēi; masc. mid-day.**
- Merum, meri; neut. wine.**
- Merx, mercis; fem. merchandise.**
- Messis, messis; fem. a harvest.**
- Metallum, metalli; neut. a metal.**
- Metellus, Metelli; masc. *Metellus*, a Roman consul.**
- Metus, metūs; masc. fear.**
- Meus, mea, meum; gen. mei; adj. pron. my, mine.**
- Miles, militis; masc. a soldier.**
- Mille and millia; adj. plural, ind. in the singular; in the plural, millia, millium, millibus; a thousand.**
- Milo, Milōnis; masc. *Milo*, a Roman who killed Clodius, and who was defended by Cicero.**
- Miltiādes, Miltiādis; masc. *Miltiades*, an Athenian general.**
- Mina, minæ; fem. a pound.**
- Minæ, minārum; fem. plur. threats.**
- Minīmus, minīma, minīmum; (super. of parvus,) the least. See p. 40.**
- Minor, mināri, minātus sum; dep. to threaten.**
- Minor, minor, minus; gen. minōris; (comp. of parvus,) less. See p. 40.**
- Mirabīlis, mirabīlis, mirabile; gen. mirabīlis; wonderful.**
- Miracūlum, miracūli; neut. a wonder, a miracle.**
- Mirus, mira, mirum; gen. miri; wonderful.**
- Miser, misēra, misērum; gen. misēri; miserable.**
- Miserandus, miseranda, miserandum; gen. miserandi; to be pitied, lamentable.**
- Misereor, miserēri, misertus and miseritus sum; dep. to pity.**
- Miseresco, miserescēre; neut. to pity: no perfect nor supine.**
- Mitis, mitis, mite; gen. mitis; meek, mild, merciful.**
- Mitto, mittēre, misi, missum; act. to send.**
- Modēror, moderāri, moderātus sum; dep. to govern, to moderate.**
- Modestus, modeata, modestum; gen. modesti; moderate, modest.**
- Mœnia, mœnium; neut. walls; used only in the plural.**
- Molestia, molestiæ; fem. trouble, vexatiousness.**
- Molestus, molesta, molestum; gen. molesti; troublesome.**
- Molo, Molōnis; masc. *Molo*, a Rhodian orator.**
- Moneo, monēre, monui, monitum; act. to admonish.**
- Monītor, monitoris; masc. an adviser.**

- Mons, montis; masc. *a mountain*.
- Morbus, morbi; masc. *a disease*.
- Morior, mori *and* moriri, mortuus sum; dep. *to die*.
- Moror, morari, moratus sum; dep. *to delay*.
- Morōsus, morōsa, morōsum; gen. morōsi; *peevish, cross*.
- Mors, mortis; fem. *death*.
- Mortālis, mortālis, mortāle; gen. mortālis; *mortal*; when not joined with a noun it means *a mortal*; that is, *a man*.
- Moveo, movēre, movi, motum; act. *to move*.
- Mox; adv. *presently*.
- Muliēbris, muliēbris, muliēbris; gen. muliēbris; *effeminate*.
- Mulier, muliēris; fem. *a woman*.
- Multitūdo, multitūdīnis; fem. *a multitude*.
- Multūm; adv. *much*; also multō, *by much*.
- Multus, multa, multum; gen. multi; *much, many*. See page 40.
- Mundus, mundi; masc. *the world*.
- Munio, munīre, munii *and* munīvi, munītum; act. *to fortify*.
- Munītus, munīta, munītum; gen. munīti; part. *fortified*.
- Munus, munēris; neut. *a gift*.
- Murus, muri; masc. *a wall*.
- Musa, musæ; fem. *a muse*.
- Muto, mutāre, mutāvi, mutātum; act. *to change*.
- Nam; conj. *for*.
- Narratio, narratiōnis; fem. *a narration*.
- Narro, narrāre, narrāvi, narrātum; act. *to relate*.
- Nascor, nasci, natus sum; dep. *to be born*.
- Natio, natiōnis; fem. *a nation*.
- Natūra, natūræ; fem. *nature, disposition*.
- Natus, nati; masc. *a son*.
- Natus, nata, natum; gen. nati; perf. participle from nascor; *descended, born*.
- Nauta, nautæ; masc. *a sailor, a mariner*.
- Navālis, navālis, navāle; gen. navālis; *naval*.
- Navis, navis; fem. *a ship*.
- Neapōlis, Neapōlis; fem. *Naples, a city of Italy*.
- Ne; adv. *not*.
- Nec; conj. *neither, nor*.
- Neco, necāre, necāvi, necātum; act. *to kill*.
- Negligens, negligens, negligens; gen. negligentis; *careless, negligent*.
- Neglīgo, neglīgere, neglexi, neglectum; act. *to neglect*.

Negotium, negotii; neut. a thing, an affair, business.

Nemo, neminis; com. no one.

Neptūnus, Neptūni; masc. Neptune, the god of the sea.

Neque; conj. neither.

Niger, nigra, nigrum; gen. nigri; black.

Nihil; noun, ind. nothing; sometimes contracted into nil.

Nihilum, nihili; neut. nothing.

Nimis; adv. too much.

Nisi; conj. unless.

No, nāre, nāvi, nātum; neut. to swim.

Nobīlis, nobīlior, nobilissimus; noble, nobler, noblest.

Noceo, nocēre, nocui, nocitum; act. to hurt.

Nomen, nominis; neut. a name.

Non; adv. not.

Nonus, nona, nonum; gen. noni; the ninth.

Nos, nostrum or nostri; we, of us, &c. See page 41.

Nosco, noscēre, novi, notum; act. to know.

Noster, nostra, nostrum; gen. nostri; our.

Novītas, novitatis; fem. novelty, newness.

Novus, nova, novum; gen. novi; new.

Nox, noctis; fem. night.

Nubes, nubis; fem. a cloud.

Nudo, nudāre, nudāvi, nudātum; act. to deprive.

Nullus, nulla, nullum; gen. nullius; no one. See page 33.

Numantia, Numantiae; fem. Numantia, a city in Spain.

Numantīni, Numantinōrum, masc. the Numantines, a people of ancient Spain.

Numen, numinis; neut. a nod, power, authority, divine influence.

Nummus, nummi; masc. a piece of money.

Nunc; adv. now.

Nuncio, nunciāre, nunciāvi, nunciātum; act. to announce, to tell; also written nuntio.

Nunquam; adv. never.

Nuntius, nuntii; masc. a messenger.

O! inter. oh!

Obedio, obedīre, obedīvi, obedītum; neut. to obey.

Obliviscor, oblivious, oblītus sum; dep. to forget.

Observatio, observatiōnis; fem. notice, observation.

Obses, obsīdis; masc. and fem. a hostage.

Obsum, obesse, obsui; neut. to be hurtful, to hurt, to injure.

Obtineo, obtinēre, obtinui, obtentum; act. to obtain.

Obviām; adv. in the way, to meet.

Occido, occidēre, occidi, occīsum; act. to kill.

Occido, occidēre, occidi, occāsum; neut. to set.

Occulto, occultāre, occultāvi, occultātum; act. to hide, to keep secret, or conceal.

Occultus, occulta, occultum; gen. occulti; hidden, secret.

Occumbo, occumbēre, occubui, occubītum; neut. to fall down, to yield.

Occupo, occupāre, occupāvi, occupātum; act. to seize, to occupy.

Octāvus, octāva, octāvum; gen. octāvi; the eighth.

Octoginta; ind. adj. eighty.

Ocūlus, ocūli; masc. an eye.

Odi; a defective verb, I hate, or have hated. It is used only in this tense, the perfect, and those derived from it.

Odōror, odorāri, odorātus sum; dep. to smell.

Officio, officēre, offēci, effectum; act. to hinder, to be hurtful to.

Officium, officii; neut. a duty, office.

Olympius, Olympia, Olympium; (like bonus,) Olympian, an epithet of Jupiter.

Omnis, omnis, omne; gen. omnis; all, every.

Onēro, operāre, onerāvi, onerātum; act. to load.

Onus, onēris; neut. a weight, a burden.

Onustus, onusta, onustum; gen. onusti; laden or loaded with.

Opēra, opēræ; fem. toil, labour.

Opērō, operāri, operātus sum; dep. to labour.

Opīmus, opīma, opīmūta; gen. opīmi; rich, fat.

Opinio, opinōnis; fem. expectation, opinion.

Opis, gen. opem, acc. ope, abl. (these three cases only are used in the singular,) fem. power, assistance; plur. opes, opum, opībus; wealth, strength.

Opportūnus, opportūna, opportūnum; gen. opportūni; convenient, favourable.

Opprīmo, opprimēre, oppressi, oppressum; act. to oppress.

Oppugno, oppugnāre, oppugnāvi, oppugnātum; act. to assault, to fight against.

Optabīlis, optabīlis, optabile; gen. optabīlis; desirable.

Optīmē; adv. best; compared thus; benē, meliūs, optīmē.

Optīmus; super. best. See page 40.

Opus; subst. indecl. need, occasion.

- Opus, opēris; neut. *a work.*
- Ora, oræ; fem. *a coast, a shore.*
- Oracūlum, oracūli; neut. *an oracle.*
- Oratio, oratiōnis; fem. *an oration.*
- Orātor, oratōris; masc. *an orator.*
- Orbo, orbāre, orbāvi, orbātum; act. *to deprive.*
- Oriens, orientis; masc. *the east, or rising of the sun.*
- Orior, orīri, ortus sum; dep. *to rise.*
- Ornatè; adv. *elegantly.*
- Ornatus, ornatūs; masc. *dress, an ornament.*
- Oro, orāre, orāvi, orātum; act. *to speak, to ask, to pray.*
- Ortus, ortūs; masc. *birth, descent.*
- Ostendo, ostendēre, ostendi, ostensum and ostentum; act. *to shew, to exhibit.*
- Ostento, ostentāre, ostentāvi, ostentātum; act. *to shew, to display, to boast.*
- Otium, otii; neut. *leisure, rest.*
- Paco, pacāre, pacāvi, pacātum; act. *to appease, to subdue.*
- Padus, Padi; masc. *the river Po.*
- Palleo, pallēre, pallui; (no supine,) neut. *to be pale.*
- Panis, panis; masc. *bread.*
- Pango, pangēre, panxi, pegin and pepīgi, pactum; act. *to strike.*
- Par, par, par; gen. paris; *equal;* pares, used as a noun, *equals.*
- Parco, parcēre, pepercī, parsūm and parcētūm; neut. *to spare.*
- Parens, parentis; com. *a parent.*
- Pareo, parēre, parui, parītūm; neut. *to obey.*
- Pario, parēre, pepēri, partum; act. *to produce, to bring forth.*
- Paris, Parīdis; masc. *Paris, a celebrated Trojan.*
- Parīter; adv. *equally, in a like degree.*
- Paro, parāre, parāvi, parātūm; act. *to prepare, to procure, to acquire.*
- Partio, partīre, partīvi, partītūm; act. *to divide.*
- Parvus, parva, parvum; gen. parvi; *small, little.* See page 40.
- Passus; passūs; masc. *a pace.*
- Pateo, patērē, patui; neut. *to be open, to be manifest.*
- Pater, patris; masc. *a father.*
- Patēra, patēræ; fem. *a goblet.*
- Patiens, patiens, patiens; gen. patientis; *patient, able to endure.*
- Patientia, patientiæ; fem. *patience.*
- Patria, patriæ; fem. *a country.*
- Patrimonium, patrimonii; neut. *an inheritance.*

Patrōnus, patrōni; masc. a patron, a defender.

Pauci, paucae, pauca; gen. paucōrum; used only in the plural, few.

Paulūlus, paulūla, paulūlum; gen. paulūli; a little.

Pauper, pauper, pauper; gen. paupēris; poor, destitute; when used without a nom. poor persons, the poor.

Paupertas, paupertatis; fem. poverty.

Pavo, pavonis; masc. a peacock.

Pax, pacis; fem. peace.

Pecco, peccāre, peccāvi, peccātum; neut. to sin, to offend, to transgress.

Pecunia, pecuniæ; fem. money.

Pecus, pecoris; neut. a flock of sheep, cattle.

Pellis, pellis; fem. a skin.

Pendo, pendēre, pependi, pensum; act. to weigh, to value.

Perāgo, peraḡre, perēgi, peractum; act. to perfect, to finish.

Perāgro, peragrāre, peragrāvi, peragratum; act. to travel over.

Percutio, percūtere, percussi, percussum; act. to strike.

Perdo, perdēre, perdīdi, perdītum; to lose, to consume, to destroy; part. pass. perdītus; lost, wretched, miserable.

Peregrinor, peregrināri, peregrinātus sum; dep. to travel over.

Pereo, perire, peri, peritum; neut. to perish, to die.

Perfectio, perfectiōnis; fem. perfection.

Perfēro, perferre, pertūli, perlātum; to carry, to bear, to convey.

Perfugio, perfugēre, perfūgi, persuḡtum; neut. to fly for shelter.

Pergo, pergēre, perrexī, perrectum; neut. to go, to proceed.

Pericūlum, pericūli; neut. danger.

Perītus, perīta, perītum; gen. perīti; skilled, expert.

Perluceo, perlucēre, perluxi; (no supine,) neut. to shine through, to be very bright.

Perniciōsus, perniciōsa, perniciōsum; gen. perniciōsi; injurious, hurtful.

Perpetuuus, perpetua, perpetuum; gen. perpetui; perpetual.

Persæ, Persārum; the Persians.

Perseus, Persei; masc. Perseus, a son of Philip, king of Macedon.

Persevēro, perseverāre, perseverāvi, perseverātum; act. to persevere.

Persuadeo, persuadēre, persuāsi, persuasum; act. to persuade.

Perturbo, perturbāre, perturbāvi, perturbātum; act. to disturb.

Pervenio, pervenīre, pervēni, perventum; neut. to come to.

Pes, pedis; fem. a foot.

Pestis, pestis; fem. a pest, pestilence, destruction.

Peto, pet̄re, pet̄vi and petii, pet̄tum; act. to desire, to seek, to go to.
 Petrus, Petri; masc. Peter.

Pharsalia, Pharsalīe; fem. *Pharsalia*, a province of Thessaly, famous
 for a battle between Cæsar and Pompey; the town is *Pharsalus*.

Pharsalīcus, Pharsalīca, Pharsalīcum; of *Pharsalia*, *Pharsalian*; Phar-
 salia was a part of Thessaly in Greece.

Pharus, Phari; fem. *Pharus*, an island in the Mediterranean sea.

Philippus, Philippi; masc. *Philip*, king of Macedon.

Philosophia, philosophiæ; fem. *philosophy*.

Philosōphus, philosōphi; masc. a *philosopher*.

Phœbus, Phœbi; masc. *Apollo*.

Phœnīces, Phœnīcum; masc. plur. the *Phœnicians*.

Phryges, Phrygum; masc. the *Phrygians*, a people of Asia Minor.

Piētas, pietatis; fem. *piety*.

Pingo, pinḡre, pinxi, pictum; act. to paint.

Piræus, Piræi; masc. *Piræus*, the port of Athens.

Piscor, piscāri, piscātus sum; dep. to fish; (the word *pisco* on page 154
 should be *piscor*.)

Pius, pia, piūm; gen. pii; pious.

Placeo, placēre, placui, placitum; neut. to please.

Plato, Platōnis; masc. *Plato*, an Athenian philosopher.

Plenus, plena, plenum; gen. pleni; full.

Plurīmus; super. of multum; most: plurīmi; very many. See page 40.

Plus, pluris; comp. of multum; more. See page 40.

Pœna, pœnæ; fem. punishment.

Polliceor, pollicēri, pollicitus sum. dep. to promise.

Pompeius, Pompeii; masc. *Pompey*, a great Roman general.

Pomum, pomī; neut. an *apple*.

Pono, ponēre, posui, positum; act. to place, to pitch.

Popūlus, popūli; masc. the *people*.

Porrīgo, porrīgēre, porrexī, porrectum; act. to reach, to extend.

Portus, portūs; masc. a *harbor, port, or haven*.

Posco, poscēre, poposci; (no supine,) to ask, to demand.

Posidonius, Posidonii; masc. *Posidonius*, a Rhodian philosopher.

Possessio, possessiōnis; fem. possession.

Possum, posse, potui; neut. to be able.

Posterītas, posteritatis; fem. *posteriority*.

Postquām; adv. after that.

Postridie; adv. on the next day.

Postūlo, postulāre, postulāvi, postulātum; act. to demand.

- Potentia, potentiae; fem. power.
- Potestas, potestatis; fem. power.
- Potio, potionis; fem. drink, a draught.
- Potior, potiri, potitus sum; dep. to possess, to enjoy.
- Præceptum, præcepti; neut. a precept, a command.
- Præcipue; adv. especially.
- Præclarus, præclara, præclarum; gen. præclari; distinguished, excellent, famous.
- Præda, prædæ; fem. prey, booty.
- Præditus, prædita, præditum; gen. præditi; endued with.
- Prædor, prædari, prædatus sum; dep. to plunder.
- Prælium, prælii; neut. a battle.
- Præluceo, prælucere, præluxi; (no supine,) neut. to surpass.
- Præmium, præmii; neut. a reward.
- Præsidium, præsidii; neut. a guard, a defence.
- Præsideo, præsidere, præsidi, præsessum; neut. to preside over.
- Præstans, præstans, præstans; gen. præstantis; excellent.
- Præstat, præstabat; impers. it is better.
- Præsum, præsse, præfui; neut. to be before or over, to command.
- Prætor, prætoris; masc. a prætor; a magistrate of Rome, next in honor to the consul.
- Pravus, prava, pravum; gen. pravi; wicked, depraved.
- Precis; dat. preci; acc. precem; abl. prece; fem. a prayer: it has but these four cases in the singular: in the plural—preces, precum, precibus; prayers, supplications.
- Pretiosus, pretiosa, pretiosum; (like bonus,) precious, valuable.
- Pretium; neut. price.
- Pridie; adv. the day before.
- Primus, prima, primum; super. first; comp. prior; the former: no positive.
- Princeps, princips; com. properly an adj. meaning, first, chief; but often used as a noun, meaning, a prince, an emperor, a general.
- Principium, principii; neut. a beginning.
- Priusquam; adv. before that.
- Privo, privare, privavi, privatum; act. to deprive.
- Probitas, probitatis; fem. goodness, probity.
- Probo, probare, probavi, probatum; act. to prove, to try.
- Proboscis, proboscidis; fem. a proboscis, an elephant's trunk.
- Probus, proba, probum; gen. probi; good, virtuous.

- Procēdo, procedēre, processi, processum; neut. to proceed.**
- Prodigium, prodigi; neut. a prodigy.**
- Proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum; dep. to go, to advance.**
- Proh! inter. oh!**
- Promitto, promittēre, promīsi, promissum; act. to promise.**
- Promptus, prompta, promptum; gen. prompti; ready.**
- Propē; adv. near.**
- Propōno, proponēre, proposui, propositum; act. to proclaim, to propose.**
- Proprior, proprietor, proprius; gen. propriōris; comp. nearer; super. proximus; nearest.** This adjective has no positive. The comparative and superlative are derived from the adverb, propē, near.
- Proprius, propria, proprium; gen. proprii; proper, peculiar, one's own.**
- Prospicio, prospicēre, prospexi, prospectum; act. to view, to provide for.**
- Prosum, prodesse, profui, (compounded of *pro* and *sum* and varied like *sum*;) to do good, to be serviceable to.**
- Provīdus, provīda, provīdum; gen. provīdi; foreseeing, wise.**
- Provincia, provinciæ; fem. a province.**
- Proximē; adv. next, very near: comparative, propriūs.**
- Prudens, prudens, prudens; gen. prudentis; prudent.**
- Prudentia, prudentiæ; fem. prudence.**
- Ptolemaeus, Ptolemæi; masc. *Ptolemy*, one of the kings of Egypt.**
- Pudor, pudōris; masc. modesty.**
- Puella, puellæ; fem. a girl.**
- Puer, puēri; masc. a boy.**
- Puerilis, puerilis, puerile; gen. puerilis; childish, puerile.**
- Pugio, puglōnis; masc. a dagger.**
- Pugna, pugnæ; fem. a battle.**
- Pugno, pugnāre, pagnāvi, pugnātum; neut. to fight, to resist.**
- Pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum; gen. pulchri; beautiful, good, excellent.**
- Punio, punīre, punīvi, punītum; act. to punish.**
- Puto, putāre, putāvi, putātum; act. to think, to consider.**
- Pyrāmis, pyramīdis; fem. a pyramid.**
- Pyrenæi, Pyrenæōrum; masc. plur. the *Pyrenees mountains*, dividing France from Spain.**
- Quāero, quārēre, quāsīvi, quāsītum; act. to ask, to seek.**
- Qualis, qualis, quale; gen. qualis; of what kind, what sort.**
- Quām; conj. than.**
- Quamōbrem; adv. wherefore.**

Quamvis; conj. *although, though.*

Quanquam; conj. *although.*

Quantum; adv. *as much as, how much! how!*

Quantus, quanta, quantum; gen. quanti; *how great, how much.*

Quartus, quarta, quartum; gen. quarti; *the fourth.*

Quatuor; indecl. *four.*

Que; conj. *and:* always joined to the end of a word.

Queror, queri, questus sum; dep. *to complain.*

Qui, quæ, quod; *who, which, that.* See page 46.

Quidam, quædam, quoddam, or quiddam; gen. ejusdam; *a certain thing or person.*

Quidem; adv. *truly, indeed.*

Quies, quietis; fem. *rest, quiet.*

Quis, quæ, quod; *who, which, what?*

Quisque, quæque, quodque or quidque; gen. ejusque; pronoun; *every one.*

Quò; adv. *whither.*

Quondam; adv. *in time past, formerly.*

Quousque; adv. *how long.*

Quum; adv. *when.*

Rapio, rapere, rapui, raptum; act. *to pull, to carry off.*

Ratio, rationis; fem. *reason.*

Rebello, rebellare, rebellavi, rebellatum; neut. *to rebel.*

Recipio, recipere, recépi, receptum; act. *to receive.*

Recordor, recordari, recordatus, sum; dep. *to remember.*

Rectè; adv. *rightly, correctly.*

Rectus, recta, rectum; gen. recti; *right, correct, virtuous.*

Reddo, reddere, reddidi, redditum; act. *to restore, to return.*

Redeo, redire, redivi, and redii, redditum; neut. *to return.*

Reféro, referre, retuli, relatum; act. *to carry back, to relate.*

Refuto, refutare, refutavi, refutatum; act. *to disprove, to restrain.*

Regina, reginæ; fem. *a queen.*

Regio, regionis, fem. *a region, a tract of country.*

Regno, regnare, regnavi, regnatum; neut. *to reign.*

Regnum, regni; neut. *a kingdom.*

Rego, regere, rex, rectum; act. *to rule.*

Religio, religonis; fem. *religion.*

Relinquo, relinquere, reliqui, relicta; act. *to leave, to forsake.*

Remeo, remeare, remeavi, remeatum; neut. *to return.*

Reminiscor, reminisci; (no part.) dep. *to remember.*

- Remunēro, remunerāre, remunerāvi, remunerātum; act. to reward, to recompense.**
- Remus, remi; masc. an oar.**
- Repāro, reparāre, reparāvi, reparātum; act. to renew, to repair.**
- Reperio, reperiēre, repēri, repertum; act. to find.**
- Repēto, repetēre, repetivi or repetii, repetitum; act. to ask or demand back or again.**
- Repleo, replēre, replēvi, replētum; act. to fill.**
- Res, rei; fem. an affair, a thing; and sometimes, property, wealth.**
- Responsum, responsi; neut. an answer.**
- Respublīca, reipublicæ; fem. a republic.**
- Rex, regis; masc. a king.**
- Rhenus, Rheni; masc. the river Rhine.**
- Rhetor, rhetoris; masc. a rhetorician, one who teaches rhetoric.**
- Rhodānus, Rhodāni; masc. the Rhone, a river of France.**
- Rhodus, Rhodi; fem. Rhodes, an island in the Mediterranean.**
- Rideo, ridēre, risi, risum; neut. to laugh.**
- Ridicūlus, ridicūla; ridicūlum; gen. ridicūli; ridiculous, worthy to be laughed at.**
- Rivus, rivi; masc. a brook, a river.**
- Rogo, rogāre, rogāvi, rogātum; act. to ask.**
- Roma, Romæ; fem. Rome, a city of Italy, and once the mistress of the world.**
- Romāni, Romanōrum; plur. masc. the Romans.**
- Romānus, Romāna, Romānum; (like bonus,) a Roman.**
- Romūlus, Romūli; masc. Romulus, the founder of Rome.**
- Rotundus, rotunda, rotundum; gen rotundi; round.**
- Ruo, ruēre, rui, ruītum; neut. to rush.**
- Rus, ruris; neut. the country: in the plural, rura, farms, fields.**
- Sæpē; adv. often.**
- Salus, salūtis; fem. health.**
- Salvus, salva, salvum; gen. salvi; safe.**
- Sanguinolentus, sanguinolenta, sanguinolentum; gen. sanguinolenti; bloody.**
- Sanguis, sanguinis; fem. blood.**
- Sano, sanāre, sanāvi, sanātum; act. to heal or cure.**
- Sanus, sana, sanum; gen. sani; sound, whole.**
- Sapiens, sapiens, sapiens; gen. sapientis; wise.**
- Sapientia, sapientiæ; fem. wisdom.**
- Sapio, sapēre, sapīvi or sapui; neut. and act. to know, to be wise.**

Sappho, Sapphūs and Sapphōnis; fem. *Sappho*, a celebrated Greek poetess.

Sardinia, Sardinīæ; fem. *Sardinia*, an island in the Mediterranean.

Sardis, Sardis; fem. *Sardis*, a city of Lydia in Asia Minor.

Satāgo, satagēre, satēgi; (no supine,) neut. *to be busy, to have enough to do.*

Satīs; adv. *enough, sufficient.*

Satisfacio, satisfacēre, satisfēci, satisfactum; act. *to satisfy, to perform.*

Saturnus, Saturnī; masc. *Saturn*, one of the heathen deities.

Satus, sata, satum; gen. sati; part. *descended from.*

Satus, satūs; masc. *a sowing, planting.*

Scelerātus, scelerāta, scelerātum; gen. scelerāti; *wicked.*

Scelestus, scelestia, scelestum; gen. scelesti; *wicked.*

Scelus, scelēris; neut. *a crime, wickedness.*

Schola, scholæ; fem. *a school.*

Scio, scīre, scivi, scitum; act. *to know.*

Scipio, Scipiōnis; *Scipio*, a Roman general.

Scitor, scitāri, scitātus sum; dep. *to ask, to inquire.*

Scopūlus, scopūli; masc. *a rock.*

Scribo, scribēre, scripsi, scriptum; act. *to write.*

Scytha, Scythæ; masc. *the Scythians*, a people in the north of Asia.

Secundum; prep. *after, as to, according to.*

Secus; prep. *by.*

Sed; conj. *but.*

Sedes, sedis; fem. *a seat, a dwelling, a habitation.*

Sejungo, sejungēre, sejunxi, sejunctum; act. *to separate.*

Selīgo, selīgēre, selēgi, selectum; act. *to select, to choose.*

Semen, semīnis; neut. *seed.*

Semper; adv. *always.*

Senātus, senātūs; masc. *the senate.*

Senātūconsultum, senātūconsulti; neut. *a decree of the senate.*

Senectus, senectūtis; fem. *old age.*

Senex, senīcis and senis; *old; comp. senior; older: no super.*

Sensus, sensūs; masc. *sense, the faculty of perceiving external objects.*

Sententia, sententiæ; fem. *an opinion, a sentence.*

Septingentesimus, septingentesima, septingentesīnum; *the seven hundredth.*

Sepulchrum, sepulchri; neut. *a sepulchre.*

Sequor, sequi, secūtus sum; dep. *to follow.*

- Serius, seria; sérium; gen. serii; *serious, grave, important.*
- Sermo, sermōnis; fem. *a speech, conversation.*
- Sero, serēre, sevi, satum; act. *to sow.*
- Serus, sera, serum; gen. seri; *late.*
- Servio, servire, servīvi, servītūm; neut. *to serve, to obey.*
- Servitium, servitii; neut. *servitude, slavery.*
- Servus, servi; masc. *a servant.*
- Sex; ind. *six.*
- Si; conj. *if.*
- Sicilia, Siciliæ; fem. *Sicily, an island in the Mediterranean.*
- Silentium, silentii; neut. *silence.*
- Simia, simiæ; fem. *an ape.*
- Similis, similis, simile; gen. simillis; *like, similar.*
- Sinceritas, sinceritat̄is; fem. *sincerity, candour.*
- Sisto, sistēre, steti, statum; neut. *to stop, to stand still.*
- Sitis, sitis; fem. *thirst.*
- Sobrīnus, sobrīni; masc. *a cousin.*
- Societas, societatis; fem. *society, an alliance.*
- Socrātes, Socrāt̄is; masc. *Socrates, a celebrated Grecian philosopher.*
- Sodālis, sodalis; com. *a companion.*
- Sol, solis; masc. *the sun.*
- Solāmen, solaminis; neut. *comfort.*
- Solatium, solatii; neut. *solace, comfort.*
- Soleo, solēre, solitus sum; neut. pass. *to be accustomed.*
- Solitudo, solitudinis; fem. *solitude.*
- Solon, Solōnis; masc. *Solon, one of the seven wise men of Greece.*
- Solum, soli; neut. *the soil.*
- Solum; adv. *only, alone.*
- Solus, sola, solum; gen. solius; *alone, only.*
- Solvo, solvēre, solvi, solūtūm; act. *to loose, to free, to pay.*
- Somnus, somni; masc. *sleep.*
- Sors, sortis; fem. *lot.*
- Sparta, Spartæ; *Sparta, one of the most powerful of the Grecian states.*
- Spartāni, Spartanōrum; masc. plur. *the Spartans, a people of Greece.*
- Specto, spectare, spectāvi, spectātūm; act. *to behold, to see, to perceive.*
- Specus, specūs; masc. *a cave.*
- Spes, spei; fem. *hope.*
- Spiritus, spirītūs; masc. *the wind, breath.*

- Spiro, spirāre, spirāvi, spirātum; act. to blow, to breathe.**
Splendeo, splendēre, splendui; neut. (no supine,) to shine.
Spolio, spoliāre, spoliāvi, spoliātum; act. to spoil, to plunder, to deprive.
Statua, statuē; fem. a statue.
Statuo, statuēre, statui, statūtum; act. to resolve.
Stella, stellæ; fem. a star.
Stirps, stirpis; com. the root of a tree, the race or lineage of a family.
Sto, stāre, steti, statum; neut. to stand.
Studeo, studēre, studui; (no supine,) neut. to study, to favour.
Studiōsus, studiōsa, studiōsum; gen. studiōsi; studious, desirous.
Studium, studii; neut. study, concern, employment.
Stultus, stulta, stultum; gen. stulti; foolish.
Suadeo, suadēre, suasi, suasum; act. to persuade.
Suavis, suavis, suave; (like mitis,) sweet, pleasant.
Subdūco, subducēre, subduxi, subductum; act. to take away, to withdraw.
Subītō; adv. suddenly.
Subītus, subīta, subītum; gen. subītū sudden.
Succenseo, succensēre, succensui; (no supine,) neut. to be angry.
Succurro, succurrēre, succurri, succursum; act. to help.
Sui; of himself, of herself, of itself. See page 42.
Sulla, Sullæ; Sylla, a Roman general.
Sum, esse, sui; neut. to be.
Summus, summa, sumnum; gen. summi; super. highest: positive, superū; high: comp. superior; higher.
Superior, superior, superius; gen. superiōris; comp. higher.
Supersedeo, supersedēre, supersēdi, supersessum; neut. to forbear.
Supersum, superesse, superfui; neut. to abound, to remain.
Supērus, supēra, supērum; gen. supēri; high.
Supervenio, supervenīre, supervēni, superventum; neut. to come upon.
Surdus, surda, surdum; gen. surdi; deaf.
Surgo, surgēre, surrexi, resurrectum; neut. to arise.
Suus, sua, suum; gen. sui; pro. his, hers, its.
Syracūsæ, Syracusārum; fem. plur. Syracuse, the capital of Sicily.
Syria, Syriæ; fem. Syria, a country of Asia.
Taceo, tacēre, tacui, tacitum; neut. to keep silence.
Tacītus, tacīta, tacitum; gen. tacīti; part. and adj. silent.
Talentum, talenti; neut. a talent, a coin worth one thousand dollars.
Tām; conj. as, such.

Tandem; adv. *at length, at last.*

Tango, tangēre, tetīgi, tactum; act. *to touch.*

Tantō; adv. *so much, by so much;* properly the ablative of tantus.

Tantus, tanta, tantum; gen. tanti; *so great, so much.*

Taurus, tauri; masc. *a bull.*

Tego, tegēre, texi, tectum; act. *to cover.*

Tegumentum, tegumenti; neut. *a covering.*

Temeritas, temeritatis; fem. *rashness.*

Templum, templi; neut. *a temple.*

Tempus, temporis; neut. *time.*

Tendo, tendēre, tetendi *and* tendi, tensum *and* tentum; act. *to extend, to stretch, to direct one's course, to march, to go.*

Tenēbrae, tenebrārum; fem. plur. *darkness.*

Teneo, tenēre, tenui, tentum; act. *to hold fast.*

Tenuis, tenuis, tenuē; gen. tenuis; *slender, thin.*

Tergum, tergi; neut. *the back.*

Terra, terræ; fem. *the earth.*

Terribilis, terribilis, terrible; gen. terribilis; *terrible.*

Terror, terroris; masc. *fear, terror.*

Testimonium, testimonii; neut. *a testimony, a witness.*

Testūdo, testudinis, fem. *a tortoise.* This name was also applied to a warlike wooden machine, covered with hides, which resembled the back of a *tortoise*, and under the cover of which the enemy approached the walls of a city in order to beat them down.

Thebæ, Thebārum; *Thebes, a city of Greece.*

Thesaurus, thesauri; masc. *a treasure.*

Thessalia, Thessalizæ; fem. *Thessaly, a country of Greece.*

Thetis, Thetidia *and* Thetidos; fem. *Thetis, one of the heathen sea-goddesses.*

Thrax, Thracis; masc. *a Thracian.*

Tibēris, Tibēris; masc. *Tiber, a river in Italy.*

Tiberius, Tiberii; masc. *Tiberius, a Roman emperor.*

Timeo, timēre, timui; neut. *and* act. *to fear.*

Timidus, timida, timidum; gen. timidi; *timid.*

Timor, timoris; masc. *fear.*

Tolero, tolerāre, tolerāvi, tolerātum; act. *to bear.*

Tonītru; neut. *ind. thunder.*

Totus, tota, totum; gen. totius; *the whole.* See page 33.

Tragœdia, tragœdiæ; fem. *tragedy.*

Transeo, transire, transivi, transitum; act. *to go, to pass.*

Transporto, transportare, transportavi, transportatum; act. *to transport.*

Tribuo, tribuere, tribui, tributum; act. *to give.*

Tridens, tridentis; masc. *a trident*, an instrument with three prongs, the sceptre of the sea-gods.

Triumphus, triumphi; masc. *a triumph.*

Troja, Trojæ; fem. *Troy*, a city in Asia, near the Aegæan sea, famous for having been besieged ten years by the Greeks.

Trojanus, Trojana, Trojanum; (like bonus,) *a Trojan*, or inhabitant of Troy.

Tu, tui; *you*. See page 42.

Tui; pron. gen. of *you*. See page 42.

Tumulus, tumuli; masc. *a little hill*. Hence it means *a grave*, as after burial the dirt was thrown up over the body in the shape of a hill.

Tunc; adv. *then, at that time.*

Turbo, turbare, turbavi, turbatum; act. *to disturb, to disorder, to throw into confusion.*

Turma, turmæ; fem. *a troop.*

Turris, turris; fem. *a tower.*

Tutor, tutari, tutatus sum; dep. *to defend.*

Tutus, tuta, tutum; gen. tuti; *safe.*

Tuus, tua, tuum; gen. tui; pron. *thy.*

Ubertas, ubertatis; fem. *richness.*

Ubi; adv. *where.*

Ubique; adv. *every where.*

Ulciscor, ulcisci, ultus sum; dep. *to avenge.*

Ullus, ulla, ullum; gen. ullius; *any, any one.*

Ultimus, ultima, ultimum; *farthest; comparative, ulterior; farther.*

Ultra; prep. *beyond.*

Ultero; adv. *willingly, of his own accord.*

Undecentum; adj. ind. *ninety-nine.* Compounded of unus, de, and centum; *one from a hundred.*

Unus, una, unum; gen. unius; *one, some one.*

Urbs, urbis; fem. *a city.*

Uro, urere, ussi, ustum; act. *to burn.*

Ursus, ursi; masc. *a bear.*

Urtica, urticæ; fem. *a thorn, a nettle.*

Usus, usus; masc. *use, experience; also, necessity, need.*

- Ut; conj. *that, as*: when an adv. *how!*
- Uterque, utrāque, utrumque; gen. utriusque; *both, each.*
- Utīca, Utīcæ; fem. *Utīca*, a city of Africa.
- Utilis, utīlis, utile; gen. utilis; *useful.*
- Utīnam; adv. of wishing; *O that! would!*
- Utor, uti, usus sum; dep. *to use, to have the benefit of.*
- Uva, uva; fem. *a grape.*
- Uxor, uxōris; fem. *a wife.*
- Vacuus, vacua, vacuum; gen. vacui; *void of, free from.*
- Væ! interj. *alas!*
- Valeo, valēre, valui, valītum; neut. *to be well.*
- Vanītas, vanitatis; fem. *vanity.*
- Variētas, varietatis; fem. *a variety.*
- Varius, varia, varium; gen. varii; *various.*
- Vasto, vastāre, vastāvi, vastātum; act. *to waste, to destroy.*
- Vecordia, vecordiæ; fem. *madness.*
- Vehementer; adv. *vehemently, exceedingly.*
- Velox, velox, velox; gen. velōcis; *swift.*
- Velūti; adv. *even as.*
- Venātor, venatōris; masc. *a hunter.*
- Vendo, vendēre, vendīdi, vendītum; act. *to sell.*
- Veneo, venīre, venii; (*no supine,*) neut. *to be sold.*
- Venia, veniæ; fem. *pardon.*
- Venio, venīre, veni, ventum; neut. *to come.*
- Ventus, venti; masc. *the wind.*
- Verber, verbēris; neut. *a lash, a stroke, a stripe.*
- Verbum, verbi; neut. *a word.*
- Verē; adv. *truly.*
- Vergo, vergēre; (*no perfect nor supine,*) neut. *to incline, to bend to.*
- Vero; conj. *truly, indeed.*
- Verres, Verris; masc. *Verres*, a Roman prætor in Sicily, whom Cicero accused of peculation.
- Versus; prep. *toward.*
- Verto, vertēre, verti, versum; act. *to turn.*
- Verus, vera, verum; gen. veri; *true.*
- Vescor, vesci; no perfect or participle; dep. *to feed.*
- Vester, vestra, vestrum; gen. vestri; *your.*
- Vestio, vestīre, vestīvi, vestītum; act. *to clothe.*
- Vestis, vestis; fem. *a garment.*

Vetus, *vetus, vetus; gen. vet̄ris; ancient.*

Via, *viæ; fem. a way.*

Vicinus, *vicini; masc. a neighbour.*

Video, *vidēre, vidi, visum; act. to see.*

Vigilio, *vigilare, vigilāvi, vigilātum; act. to watch.*

Viginti; *adj. ind. twenty.*

Villa, *villæ; fem. a villa or cottage.*

Vincio, *vincere, vinxi, vincitum; act. to bind.*

Vinco, *vincere, vici, victum; act. to conquer.*

Vinculum, *vincūli; neut. a chain.*

Viölo, *violare, violāvi, violātum; act. to force, to violate.*

Vir, *viri; masc. a man.*

Virgilius, *Virgilii; Virgil, the greatest of the Latin poets.*

Viridis, *viridis, viride; gen. viridis; green.*

Virtus, *virtutis; fem. virtue, valour.*

Vis; *gen. vis; acc. vim; voc. vis; abl. vi; fem. strength, power.* In the singular it has but these five cases; in the plural it is regular; *vires, virium, viribus, &c.*

Visus, *visus; masc. sight.*

Vita, *vitæ; fem. life.*

Vitiōsus, *vitiōsa, vitiōsum; (like bonus,) bad, vicious.*

Vitis, *vitis; fem. a vine.*

Vitium, *vitii; neut. vice, a crime.*

Vito, *vitare, vitāvi, vitātum; act. to avoid, to shun.*

Vivo, *vivere, vixi, victum; neut. to live, to have life.*

Voco, *vocare, vocāvi, vocātum; act. to call, to summon.*

Volo, *volare, volāvi, volātum; neut. to fly.*

Volo, *velle, volui; (no supine,) irreg. to wish, to be willing.* The particle, *volens*, is often used adverbially, *willingly*.

<i>Ind. pres.</i>	{	<i>Sing. volo,</i>	<i>I wish;</i>	<i>Plur. volūmus,</i>	<i>we wish,</i>
		<i>vis,</i>	<i>thou wishest;</i>	<i>vultis,</i>	<i>you wish;</i>
		<i>vult,</i>	<i>he wishes;</i>	<i>volunt,</i>	<i>they wish.</i>

Voluntas, *voluntatis; fem. the will, the pleasure.*

Voluptas, *voluptatis; fem. pleasure.*

Vox, *vocis; fem. a voice.*

Vulnēro, *vulnerare, vulnerāvi, vulnerātum; act. to wound.*

Vulnus, *vulnēris; neut. a wound.*

Vultus, *vultūs; masc. the countenance.*

Xantippe, *Xantippes; fem. 1st declension; Xantippe, the wife of Socrates.*

